DX100 INSTRUCTIONS

Upon receipt of the product and prior to initial operation, read these instructions thoroughly, and retain for future reference.

MOTOMAN INSTRUCTIONS

MOTOMAN-DID INSTRUCTIONS DX100 INSTRUCTIONS DX100 OPERATOR'S MANUAL DX100 MAINTENANCE MANUAL

The DX100 operator's manuals above correspond to specific usage. Be sure to use the appropriate manual.





- This manual explains setup, diagnosis, maintenance, hardware, etc. of the DX100 system. Read this manual carefully and be sure to understand its contents before handling the DX100.
- General items related to safety are listed in Section 1. To ensure correct and safe operation, carefully read the section.



- Some drawings in this manual are shown with the protective covers or shields removed for clarity. Be sure all covers and shields are replaced before operating this product.
- The drawings and photos in this manual are representative examples and differences may exist between them and the delivered product.
- YASKAWA may modify this model without notice when necessary due to product improvements, modifications, or changes in specifications. If such modification is made, the manual number will also be revised.
- If your copy of the manual is damaged or lost, contact a YASKAWA representative to order a new copy. The representatives are listed on the back cover. Be sure to tell the representative the manual number listed on the front cover.
- YASKAWA is not responsible for incidents arising from unauthorized modification of its products. Unauthorized modification voids your product's warranty.

Notes for Safe Operation

Read this manual carefully before installation, operation, maintenance, or inspection of the DX100.

In this manual, the Notes for Safe Operation are classified as "WARNING", "CAUTION", "MANDATORY" or "PROHIBITED".





Indicates a potentially hazardous situation which, if not avoided, could result in death or serious injury to personnel.

Indicates a potentially hazardous situation which, if not avoided, could result in minor or moderate injury to personnel and damage to equipment. It may also be used to alert against unsafe practices.



Always be sure to follow explicitly the items listed under this heading.



Must never be performed.

Even items described as "CAUTION" may result in a serious accident in some situations.

At any rate, be sure to follow these important items.



To ensure safe and efficient operation at all times, be sure to follow all instructions, even if not designated as "CAU-TION" and "WARNING".



- Confirm that no person is present in the P-point maximum envelope of the manipulator and that you are in a safe location before:
 - Turning ON the DX100 power
 - Moving the manipulator with the programming pendant
 - Running the system in the check mode
 - Performing automatic operations

Injury may result if anyone enters the P-point maximum envelope of the manipulator during operation. Always press an emergency stop button immediately if there are problems. The emergency stop buttons are located on the right of the front door of the DX100 and the programming pendant.

- Observe the following precautions when performing teaching operations within the P-point maximum envelope of the manipulator:
 - View the manipulator from the front whenever possible.
 - Always follow the predetermined operating procedure.
 - Ensure that you have a safe place to retreat in case of emergency.

Improper or unintended manipulator operation may result in injury.

 Before operating the manipulator, check that servo power is turned OFF when the emergency stop buttons on the front door of the DX100 and programming pendant are pressed.
 When the servo power is turned OFF, the SERVO ON LED on the programming pendant is turned OFF.

Injury or damage to machinery may result if the emergency stop circuit cannot stop the manipulator during an emergency. The manipulator should not be used if the emergency stop buttons do not function.

Fig. : Emergency Stop Button



 Once the emergency stop button is released, clear the cell of all items which could interfere with the operation of the manipulator. Then turn the servo power ON.

Injury may result from unintentional or unexpected manipulator motion.

Fig. : Release of Emergency Stop





Definition of Terms Used Often in This Manual

The MOTOMAN is the YASKAWA industrial robot product.

The MOTOMAN consists of the manipulator, the controller, the programming pendant, and manipulator cables.

In this manual, the equipment is designated as follows.

Equipment	Manual Designation
DX100 Controller	DX100
DX100 Programming Pendant	Programming Pendant
Cable between the manipulator and the controller	Manipulator Cable

Descriptions of the programming pendant, buttons, and displays are	Э
shown as follows:	

Equipment		Manual Designation
Programming Pendant	Character Keys	The keys which have characters printed on them are denoted with []. ex. [ENTER]
	Symbol Keys	The keys which have a symbol printed on them are not denoted with [] but depicted with a small picture.
		ex. page key The cursor key is an exception, and a picture is not shown.
	Axis Keys Number Keys	"Axis Keys" and "Number Keys" are generic names for the keys for axis operation and number input.
	Keys pressed simultaneously	When two keys are to be pressed simultaneously, the keys are shown with a "+" sign between them, ex. [SHIFT]+[COORD]
	Displays	The menu displayed in the programming pendant is denoted with { }. ex. {JOB}

Description of the Operation Procedure

In the explanation of the operation procedure, the expression "Select •••" means that the cursor is moved to the object item and the SELECT key is pressed, or that the item is directly selected by touching the screen.

Registered Trademark

In this manual, names of companies, corporations, or products are trademarks, registered trademarks, or brand names for each company or corporation. The indications of (R) and TM are omitted.

Explanation of Warning Labels

The following warning labels are attached to the manipulator and DX100.

Fully comply with the precautions on the warning labels.



1	Safety.		1-1
	1.1	For Your Safety	1-1
	1.2	Special Training	1-2
	1.3	Motoman Manual List	1-2
	1.4	Personnel Safety	1-3
	1.5	Motoman Safety	1-5
		1.5.1 Installation and Wiring Safety	1-5
		1.5.2 Work Area Safety	1-9
		1.5.3 Operation Safety	1-10
	1.6	Notes for Moving and Transferring the MOTOMAN	1-13
	1.7	Notes on MOTOMAN Disposal	1-14
2	Produc	t Confirmation	2-1
	2.1	Contents Confirmation	2-1
	2.2	Order Number Confirmation	2-2
3	Installa	tion	3-1
	3.1	Handling Procedure	3-1
		3.1.1 Using a Crane to Move the Controller	3-1
		3.1.2 Using a Forklift to Move the Controller	3-2
	3.2	Place of Installation	3-3
	3.3	Location	3-4
	3.4	Mounting the Controller	3-5
4	Connec	ction	4-1
	4.1	Notes on Cable Junctions	4-2
	4.2	Power Supply	4-3
		4.2.1 Three-Phase Power Supply	4-3
		4.2.2 Noise Filter Installation	4-3
		4.2.3 Leakage Breaker Installation	4-4
		4.2.4 Primary Power Supply Breaker Installation	4-5
	4.3	Connection Methods	4-6
		4.3.1 Connecting the Primary Power Supply	4-6
		4.3.2 Connecting the Manipulator Cable	4-11
		4.3.3 Connecting the Programming Pendant	4-12

DX100 Contents 5 Turning ON and OFF the Power Supply......5-1 5.3.1 Turning OFF the Servo Power (Emergency Stop)......5-5 7.1.2.1 Changing User ID......7-7

		8.3.1.3 Registering Tool Angle	
		8.3.1.4 Setting the Tool Load Information	
	8.3.2	Tool Calibration	
		8.3.2.1 1001 Calibration	8-23 8-23
		8.3.2.3 Teaching of Calibration Point	
		8.3.2.4 Clearing Calibration Data	
		8.3.2.5 Checking the TCP	
	8.3.3	Automatic Measurement of the Tool Load and the Center of Gravity	
		8.3.3.1 What is the Automatic Measurement of the Tool Load and the Center of Gravity?	8-32
		8.3.3.2 Measurement of the Tool Load and the Center of Gravity	8-33
8.4	ARM C	Control	8-38
	8.4.1	ARM Control	
	8.4.2	ARM CONTROL Window	
		8.4.2.1 Robot Setup Condition	
	8.4.3	Tool Load Information Setting	
		8.4.3.1 Tool Load Information	8-43
		8.4.3.2 How to Calculate Tool Load Information	8-43
		8.4.3.3 Tool Load Information Registering	8-49
8.5	Work H	Home Position	8-52
	8.5.1	What is the Work Home Position?	8-52
	8.5.2	Setting Work Home Position	
		8.5.2.1 Work Home Position Window	0 50
		8.5.2.2 Registering/Changing the Work Home Position	8-52 8-54
		8.5.2.2 Registering/Changing the Work Home Position8.5.2.3 Returning to the Work Home Position	8-52 8-54 8-55
		8.5.2.2 Registering/Changing the Work Home Position8.5.2.3 Returning to the Work Home Position8.5.2.4 Output of the Work Home Position Signal	8-52 8-54 8-55 8-55
8.6	Interfer	 8.5.2.2 Registering/Changing the Work Home Position 8.5.2.3 Returning to the Work Home Position 8.5.2.4 Output of the Work Home Position Signal rence Area 	8-52 8-54 8-55 8-55 8-55
8.6	Interfer 8.6.1	 8.5.2.2 Registering/Changing the Work Home Position 8.5.2.3 Returning to the Work Home Position 8.5.2.4 Output of the Work Home Position Signal rence Area Interference Area 	8-52 8-54 8-55 8-55 8-56 8-56
8.6	Interfer 8.6.1 8.6.2	8.5.2.2 Registering/Changing the Work Home Position 8.5.2.3 Returning to the Work Home Position 8.5.2.4 Output of the Work Home Position Signal rence Area Interference Area Cubic Interference Area Cubic Interference Area	8-52 8-54 8-55 8-55 8-56 8-56 8-56
8.6	Interfer 8.6.1 8.6.2	 8.5.2.2 Registering/Changing the Work Home Position	8-52 8-54 8-55 8-55 8-56 8-56 8-56
8.6	Interfer 8.6.1 8.6.2	8.5.2.2 Registering/Changing the Work Home Position 8.5.2.3 Returning to the Work Home Position 8.5.2.4 Output of the Work Home Position Signal rence Area Interference Area Cubic Interference Area 8.6.2.1 Cubic Interference Area 8.6.2.2 Cube Setting Method 1.000000000000000000000000000000000000	8-52 8-54 8-55 8-55 8-56 8-56 8-56 8-56 8-56 8-56
8.6	Interfer 8.6.1 8.6.2	8.5.2.2 Registering/Changing the Work Home Position 8.5.2.3 Returning to the Work Home Position 8.5.2.4 Output of the Work Home Position Signal rence Area Interference Area Cubic Interference Area 8.6.2.1 S.6.2.2 Cube Setting Method 8.6.2.3 Setting Operation	8-52 8-54 8-55 8-55 8-56 8-56 8-56 8-56 8-56 8-58
8.6	Interfer 8.6.1 8.6.2 8.6.3	8.5.2.2 Registering/Changing the Work Home Position 8.5.2.3 Returning to the Work Home Position 8.5.2.4 Output of the Work Home Position Signal rence Area Interference Area Cubic Interference Area 8.6.2.1 S.6.2.2 Cube Setting Method 8.6.2.3 Setting Operation Axis Interference Area	8-52 8-54 8-55 8-55 8-56 8-56 8-56 8-56 8-58 8-58 8-64
8.6	Interfer 8.6.1 8.6.2 8.6.3	 8.5.2.2 Registering/Changing the Work Home Position	8-52 8-54 8-55 8-56 8-56 8-56 8-56 8-56 8-56 8-58 8-64 8-64
8.6	Interfer 8.6.1 8.6.2 8.6.3	 8.5.2.2 Registering/Changing the Work Home Position	8-52 8-54 8-55 8-55 8-56 8-56 8-56 8-56 8-56 8-58 8-58 8-64 8-64 8-65
8.6	Interfer 8.6.1 8.6.2 8.6.3 8.6.4	 8.5.2.2 Registering/Changing the Work Home Position	8-52 8-54 8-55 8-55 8-56 8-56 8-56 8-56 8-56 8-58 8-58 8-64 8-64 8-65 8-72
8.6 8.7	Interfer 8.6.1 8.6.2 8.6.3 8.6.4 Shock	8.5.2.2 Registering/Changing the Work Home Position 8.5.2.3 Returning to the Work Home Position 8.5.2.4 Output of the Work Home Position Signal rence Area Interference Area Cubic Interference Area 8.6.2.1 Cubic Interference Area 8.6.2.2 Cube Setting Method 8.6.2.3 Setting Operation 4.6.3.1 Axis Interference Area 8.6.3.2 Setting Operation 5.6.3.2 Setting Operation 5.6.3.2 </td <td>8-52 8-54 8-55 8-55 8-56 8-56 8-56 8-56 8-56 8-58 8-64 8-64 8-65 8-65 8-72 8-74</td>	8-52 8-54 8-55 8-55 8-56 8-56 8-56 8-56 8-56 8-58 8-64 8-64 8-65 8-65 8-72 8-74
8.6 8.7	Interfer 8.6.1 8.6.2 8.6.3 8.6.4 Shock 8.7.1	8.5.2.2 Registering/Changing the Work Home Position 8.5.2.3 Returning to the Work Home Position 8.5.2.4 Output of the Work Home Position Signal rence Area Interference Area Cubic Interference Area 8.6.2.1 Cubic Interference Area 8.6.2.2 Cube Setting Method 8.6.2.3 Setting Operation Axis Interference Area 8.6.3.1 Axis Interference Area 8.6.3.2 Setting Operation Clearing the Interference Area Data Detection Function Shock Detection Function Shock Detection Function	8-52 8-54 8-55 8-55 8-56 8-56 8-56 8-56 8-56 8-58 8-64 8-64 8-65 8-65 8-72 8-74 8-74
8.6 8.7	Interfer 8.6.1 8.6.2 8.6.3 8.6.4 Shock 8.7.1 8.7.2	8.5.2.2 Registering/Changing the Work Home Position 8.5.2.3 Returning to the Work Home Position 8.5.2.4 Output of the Work Home Position Signal rence Area Interference Area Cubic Interference Area 8.6.2.1 Cubic Interference Area 8.6.2.2 Cube Setting Method 8.6.2.3 Setting Operation Axis Interference Area 8.6.3.1 Axis Interference Area 8.6.3.2 Setting Operation Clearing the Interference Area Data Detection Function Shock Detection Function Setting	8-52 8-54 8-55 8-55 8-56 8-56 8-56 8-56 8-56 8-64 8-64 8-64 8-65 8-72 8-74 8-74

	8.7.2.2 Tool Load Information Setting	8-77
	8.7.2.3 Instruction of Shock Detection Function	8-77
	8.7.2.4 Resetting the Shock Detected	8-82
8.8 User	Coordinate Setting	8-83
8.8.	1 User Coordinates	8-83
8.8.	2 User Coordinate Setting	8-84
	8.8.2.1 Selecting the User Coordinate File	8-84
	8.8.2.2 Teaching the User Coordinates	8-85
	8.8.2.3 Clearing the User Coordinates	8-87
8.9 Overr	run / Tool Shock Sensor Releasing	8-88
8.10 Soft	t Limit Release Function	8-90
8.11 All L	_imit Release Function	8-91
8.12 Instr	ruction Level Setting	8-93
8.12	2.1 Setting Contents	8-93
	8.12.1.1 Instruction Set	8-93
	8.12.1.2 Learning Function	8-94
8.12	2.2 Setting the Instruction Set Level	8-94
8.12	2.3 Setting the Learning Function	8-96
8.13 Sett	ting the Controller Clock	8-97
8.14 Sett	ting the Play Speed	8-98
8.15 Num	neric Key Customize Function	8-100
8.15	5.1 What is the Numeric Key Customize Function?	8-100
8.15	5.2 Allocatable Functions	8-100
	8.15.2.1 Key Allocation (EACH)	8-100
	8.15.2.2 Key Allocation (SIM)	8-101
8.15	5.3 Allocating an Operation	8-102
	8.15.3.1 Allocation Window	8-102
	8.15.3.2 Instruction Allocation	8-103
	8.15.3.3 Job Call Allocation	8-105
	8.15.3.4 Display Allocation	8-105
	8.15.3.5 Alternate Output Allocation	8-107
	8.15.3.6 Momentary Output Allocation	8-108
	8.15.3.7 Pulse Output Allocation	8-108
	8.15.3.8 Group (4-bit/8-bit) Output Allocation	8-109
	8.15.3.9 Analog Output Allocation	8-109
	8.15.3.10 Analog Incremental Output Allocation	8-110
8.15	5.4 Allocation of I/O Control Instructions	8-111
8.15	5.5 Execution of Allocation	8-112
	8.15.5.1 Executing the Instruction/Output Control Allocation	8-112
	8.15.5.2 Executing the Job Call Allocation	8-112

		8.15.5.3 Executing the Display Allocation	
	0.40	8. 15.5.4 Executing the I/O Control Allocation	
	8.16	Changing the Output Status	8-114
	8.17	Changing the Parameter Setting	8-116
	8.18	File Initialization	8-119
		8.18.1 Initializing Job File	8-119
		8.18.2 Initializing Data File	8-120
		8.18.3 Initializing Parameter File	8-121
		8.18.4 Initializing I/O Data	8-122
		8.18.5 Initializing System Data	8-124
	8.19	Display Setting Function	8-126
		8.19.1 Font Size Setting	8-126
		8.19.1.1 Applicable Range for the Font Size Change	8-126
		8.19.1.2 Settable Font Size	8-126
		8.19.1.3 Setting the Font Size	8-126
		8.19.2 Operation Button Size Setting	
		8.19.2.1 Applicable Range for the Button Size Change	
		8.19.2.2 Settable Button Size	
		8.19.2.3 Setting the Button Size	8-130
		8.19.3 Initialization of Screen Layout	
		8.19.3.1 Initializing the Screen Layout	8-134
		8.19.4 Layout Storage	8-136
9 Sy	ystem	Backup	9-1
	9.1	System Backup with DX100	9-1
		9.1.1 Function Types of Data	9-1
		9.1.1.1 CMOS.BIN	9-1
		9.1.1.2 CMOSBK.BIN	9-1
		9.1.1.3 CMOSxx.HEX	9-1
		9.1.1.4 ALCMSxx.HEX	9-1
		9.1.2 Device	9-2
	9.2	Backup by CMOS.BIN	9-3
		9.2.1 CMOS.BIN Save	9-3
		9.2.2 CMOS.BIN Load	9-5
	9.3	Automatic Backup Function	9-7
		9.3.1 Automatic Backup Function	9-7
		9.3.1.1 Objective	9-7
		9.3.1.2 Outline	9-7
		9.3.2 Settings for Automatic Backup	9-9

	9.3.2.1 CompactFlash	9-9
	9.3.2.2 AUTO BACKUP SET Display	
	9.3.2.3 DX100 Status and Automatic Backup	
	9.3.2.4 Setting Examples	
9.4	Loading the Backup Data from the CompactFlash	9-17
	9.4.1 Loading Procedure	9-17
9.5	Error List	
	9.5.1 Error Contents	
Upgrad	le Function	10-1
10.1	Functional Overview	10-1
10.2	Upgrade Procedure	
	10.2.1 Confirmation of Software Version	10-1
	10.2.2 Automatic Upgrade of YPP01	10-2
10.3	Error Message	10-4
Modific	ation of System Configuration	11-1
11.1	Addition of I/O Modules	11-1
11.2	Addition of Base and Station Axes	11-3
	11.2.1 Base Axis Setting	11-5
	11.2.1.1 Selection of Base Axis Type	11-5
	11.2.1.2 Connection Setting	11-8
	11.2.1.3 Axis Configuration Setting	
	11.2.1.4 Mechanical Specification Setting	
	11.2.1.5 Motor Specification Setting	
	11.2.2 Station Axis Setting	
	11.2.2.1 Selection of Station Axis Type	11-13
	11.2.2.2 Configuration Setting	
	11.2.2.4 Mechanical Specification Setting	
	11.2.2.5 Motor Specification Setting	
DX100	Specification	12-1
12.1	Specification List	
12.2	Function List	12-3
12.3	Programming Pendant	12-4
12.4	Equipment Configuration	12-5
	12.4.1 Arrangement of Units and Circuit Boards	12-5
	12.4.2 Cooling System of the Controller Interior	12-7
	9.4 9.5 Upgrac 10.1 10.2 10.3 Modific 11.1 11.2 DX100 12.1 12.2 12.3 12.4	9.3.2.1 CompactFlash 9.3.2.2 AUTO BACKUP SET Display 9.3.2.3 DX100 Status and Automatic Backup 9.3.2.4 Setting Examples 9.4 Loading the Backup Data from the CompactFlash 9.4.1 Loading Procedure 9.5 Error List 9.5.1 Error Contents Upgrade Function

13	Descrip	tion of Units and Circuit Boards	13-1
	13.1	Power Supply Contactor Unit	13-3
	13.2	Major Axes Control Circuit Board (SRDA-EAXA01)	13-4
		13.2.1 Major Axes Control Circuit Board (SRDA-EAXA01)	13-4
		13.2.2 Connection for Tool Shock Sensor (SHOCK)	13-5
		13.2.2.1 To connect the tool shock sensor directly to the tool shock sensor signal line	13-5
		13.2.2.2 To connect the tool shock sensor with the cable that is built into the manipulator	13-6
		13.2.3 Connection for Direct-in	13-7
	13.3	CPU Unit	13-8
		13.3.1 CPU Unit Configuration	13-8
		13.3.2 Unit and Circuit Board in the CPU Unit	13-9
		13.3.2.1 Control Circuit Board (JANCD-YCP01-E)	13-9
		13.3.2.2 Robot I/F Board (JANCD-YIF01-1E)	13-9
	13.4	CPS Unit (JZNC-YPS01-E)	. 13-10
	13.5	Brake Control Board (JANCD-YBK01-□E)	. 13-12
		13.5.1 Brake Control Board (JANCD-YBK01-□E)	. 13-12
	13.6	Robot I/O Unit (JZNC-YIU01-E)	. 13-13
		13.6.1 Robot I/O Unit (JZNC-YIU01-E)	. 13-13
	13.7	Machine Safety Unit (JZNC-YSU01-1E)	13-18
		13.7.1 Machine Safety Unit (JZNC-YSU01-1E)	. 13-18
		13.7.2 Connection for Servo-ON Enable Input (ONEN1 and ONEN2)	.13-19
		13.7.3 Connection for External Axis Overrun (EXOT)	. 13-20
	13.8	WAGO Connector	. 13-21
	13.9	Robot Specific Input Terminal Block (MXT)	. 13-23
	13.10	Contact Output of Emergency Stop Button	. 13-34
	13.11	SERVOPACK	. 13-35
		13.11.1 Description of Each Unit	. 13-35
		13.11.1.1 Converter	. 13-35
		13.11.1.2 PWM Amplifier	. 13-35
		13.11.2 SERVOPACK Configuration	. 13-35
	13.12	2 Universal I/O Signal Assignment	. 13-40
		13.12.1 Arc Welding	. 13-40
		13.12.2 Handling	. 13-46
		13.12.3 General Application	. 13-52

DX100	Contents	
	13.12.4 Spot Welding	13-58
	13.12.5 JANCD-YEW01-E Circuit Board (Standard)	
	13.12.5.1 Arc Welding	

1 Safety

1.1 For Your Safety

1 Safety

1.1 For Your Safety

Robots generally have requirements which are different from other manufacturing equipment, such as larger working areas, high-speed operation, rapid arm movements, etc., which can pose safety hazards.

Read and understand the instruction manuals and related documents, and observe all precautions in order to avoid the risk of injury to personnel and damage to equipment.

It is the user's responsibility to ensure that all local, state, and national codes, regulations rules, or laws relating to safety and safe operating conditions are met and followed.



- Teaching maintenance of the robot must conform to:
 - Industrial Safety and Health Law
 - Enforcement Order of Industrial Safety and Health Law
 - Ordinance of Industrial Safety and Health Law

Other related laws are:

- Occupational Safety and Health Act in USA
- Factory Act (Gewerbeordnung) in Germany
- Health and Safety at Work, etc. Act in UK
- EC Machinery Directive 98/37/EC
- Prepare
 - SAFETY WORK REGULATIONS

based on concrete policies for safety management complying with related laws.

- Observe
 - JIS B 8433-1:2007 (ISO 10218-1:2006)
 - INDUSTRIAL ROBOT- SAFETY REQUIREMENTS

for safe operation of the robot. (Japan Only) (JIS B 8433)

- Reinforce the
 - SAFETY MANAGEMENT SYSTEM

by designating authorized workers and safety managers, as well as giving continuing safety education.

• Teaching and maintaining the robot are specified as "Hazardous Operations" in the Industrial Safety and Health Law (Japan only).

Workers employed in these above operations are requested to attend special training offered by YASKAWA.

- 1 Safety
- 1.2 Special Training

1.2 Special Training



1.3 Motoman Manual List



1 Safety

1.4 Personnel Safety

1.4 Personnel Safety

The entire manipulator P-point maximum envelope is potentially dangerous.

All personnel working with the MOTOMAN (safety administration, installation, operation, and maintenance personnel) must always be prepared and "Safety First" minded, to ensure the safety of all personnel.



Safety
 Personnel Safety



1.5 Motoman Safety

1.5 Motoman Safety

1.5.1 Installation and Wiring Safety

Refer to the MOTOMAN-

In planning installation, adapt an easy to observe arrangement to ensure safety. Take safety into consideration when planning the installation. Observe the following when installing the manipulator:





1 Safety 1.5

٠

Motoman Safety CAUTION MOTOMAN should be lifted with a crane using wire rope threaded through the shipping bolts and positioners and the body should be lifted in an upright posture as described in the manipulator instruction manual. Failure to observe these precautions may cause the manipulator to turn downward, potentially causing injury or damage to equipment. When lifting the DX100, please check the following: - As a rule, handling of DX100 must be performed using a crane with wire rope threaded through attached eyebolts. - Be sure to use wire that is strong enough to handle the weight of the DX100. Table 1-1: Approx. Weight of DX100 Wire Rope Models Available for Approx. Weight **DX100** (kg) small capacity: A-Type M16 Eye Bolt MA1400, MA1900, (standard) VA1400, MH5, MH5L, 100 MH6, HP20D, HP20D-6 middle/large capacity: A-Type MH50, MS80, ES165D, (standard) ES200D, VS50, SIA50D Ē 100 DX100

Be sure the eyebolts are securely fastened.

Failure to observe this caution may result in injury or damage to equipment.

If storing the manipulator temporarily before installation, be sure to • place it on a stable and flat surface and take precautions to prevent unauthorized personnel from touching it.

Failure to observe this precaution may result in injury of damage to equipment.

1.5 Motoman Safety



Safety
 Motoman Safety



Safety 1.5 Motoman Safety

1.5.2 Work Area Safety

Carelessness contributes to serious accidents in the work area.

To ensure safety, enforce the following precautions:



Install a safeguarding around the manipulator to prevent any • accidental contact with the manipulator while the power is ON. Post a warning sign stating "Off-limits During Operation" at the entrance of the enclosure. The gate of the safeguarding must be equipped with a safety interlock. Be sure the interlock operates correctly before use.

Failure to observe this caution may result in a serious accident due to contact with the manipulator.



Store tools and similar equipment in proper locations outside of the • enclosure.

Tools and loose equipment should not be left on the floor around the manipulator, DX100, or welding fixture, etc., as injury or damage to equipment can occur if the manipulator comes in contact with objects or equipment left in the work area.

- 1 Safety
- 1.5 Motoman Safety

1.5.3 Operation Safety



1.5 Motoman Safety



• Before operating the manipulator, check that the SERVO ON lamp on the programming pendant goes out when the emergency stop buttons on the front door of the DX100, on the programming pendant, and on the external control device, etc. are pressed. And confirm that the servo lamp is turned OFF.

Injury or damage to machinery may result if the manipulator cannot be stopped in case of an emergency.

- Prior to performing the following operations, be sure that no one is in the P-point maximum envelope of the manipulator when:
 - Turning ON the DX100 power
 - Moving the manipulator with the programming pendant
 - Running the system in the check mode
 - Performing automatic operations

Injury may result from contact with the manipulator if persons enter the P-point maximum envelope of the manipulator.

Press the emergency stop button immediately if there are problems.

The emergency stop buttons are located on the right of the front door of the DX100 and the programming pendant.



Safety
 Motoman Safety





1 Safety

1.6 Notes for Moving and Transferring the MOTOMAN

1.6 Notes for Moving and Transferring the MOTOMAN

When moving or transferring the Motoman, observe the following safety precautions:



- 1 Safety
- 1.7 Notes on MOTOMAN Disposal

1.7 Notes on MOTOMAN Disposal



• Never modify the manipulator or DX100.

Failure to observe this precaution could result in injury or damage resulting from fire, power failure, or operation error.



2 Product Confirmation

2.1 Contents Confirmation

2 Product Confirmation

2.1 Contents Confirmation

Confirm the contents of the delivery when the product arrives.

Standard delivery includes the following five items (Information for the content of optional goods is given separately):

- Manipulator
- DX100
- Programming Pendant
- Manipulator Cable (Between Manipulator and DX100)
- Complete Set of Manuals
- Fig. 2-1: Standard Five Items



Manipulator Cable

- 2 Product Confirmation
- 2.2 Order Number Confirmation

2.2 Order Number Confirmation

Confirm that the order number pasted on the manipulator and DX100 match.

The order number plates are affixed to the figure below.



3 Installation

3.1 Handling Procedure

3 Installation

3.1 Handling Procedure



Excessive vibration or impacting the DX100 may adversely affect the performance of the DX100.

3.1.1 Using a Crane to Move the Controller

Check the following before handling the DX100:

- Confirm the weight of the controller before handling, and use a wire rope with a rating that is greater than the weight of the controller.
- Install eyebolts for handling and confirm they are securely fastened before hoisting.



Table 3-1: Au	oprox. Weia	ht of DX100

Models Available for DX100	Approx. Weight (kg)
small capacity: MA1400, MA1900, VA1400, MH5, MH5L, MH6, HP20D, HP20D-6	A-Type (standard) 100
middle, large capacity: MH50, MS80, ES165D, ES200D, VS50, SIA50D	A-Type (standard) 100

- 3 Installation
- 3.1 Handling Procedure

3.1.2 Using a Forklift to Move the Controller

Observe the following precautions when using a forklift to handle the controller:

- Confirm that there is a safe work environment and that the DX100 can be transported safely to the installation site.
- Inform people along the forklift route that equipment is being moved in their area.
- Secure the controller so it cannot shift or fall during handling.
- Transport the controller at the lowest possible height.
- Avoid jarring, dropping, or hitting the controller during handling.
- When carrying the controller, operate the forklift at a safe speed.



- 3 Installation
- 3.2 Place of Installation

3.2 Place of Installation

The conditions listed below must be met before installing the DX100:

- Ambient temperature must be 0 to 45° C (32 to 113°F) during operation and -10 to 60°C (14 to 140°F) during transportation and maintenance.
- Humidity must be low with no condensation (10~90%RH).
- It must be a place with little dirt, dust, or water.
- No flammable or corrosive liquids or gases, etc. in the area.
- Little jarring or potential for striking of the DX100 (under 0.5 oscillation).
- No large electric noise source (such as a TIG welding device, etc.) nearby.
- No potential for collision with moving equipment such as forklifts.

- 3 Installation
- 3.3 Location

3.3 Location

- 1. Install the DX100 outside of the P-point maximum envelope of the manipulator (outside of the safeguarding.)
- Fig. 3-1: Location of DX100



- 2. Install the controller in a location from which the manipulator is easily visible.
- 3. Install the controller in a location from which you can easily inspect it when the door is open.



4. Install the controller at least 500mm from the nearest wall to allow maintenance access.

- 3 Installation
- 3.4 Mounting the Controller



A-Type (Standard)

3.4 Mounting the Controller



Attach the controller to the floor using user-supplied brackets made according to the specifications shown below.





Refer to the Instruction Manual for information on installation of the manipulator.
Connection

4

4 Connection





- 4 Connection
- 4.1 Notes on Cable Junctions

4.1 Notes on Cable Junctions

- The cables that connect the controller to peripheral device are low voltage circuits. Keep controller signal cables away from the primary power circuit. High voltage power lines should not be run in parallel to controller signal cables. If running parallel cables is unavoidable, use metal ducts or conduit to isolate electrical signal interference. If cables must be crossed, run the power cables perpendicular across the signal cables.
- Confirm the connector and cable numbers to prevent misconnection and equipment damage. One connects the manipulator and DX100.
 Another connects the DX100 and peripheral device. A wrong connection can cause damage to electronic equipment.
- Clear the area of all unauthorized personnel while making cable connections. Place all cables in a covered cable channel in the floor.

Fig. 4-1: DX100 Cable Junction Diagram



- Connection
- 4.2 Power Supply

4.2 Power Supply

4

4.2.1 Three-Phase Power Supply



The power failure processing circuit operates when there is a black out or drop in voltage, and the servo power turns OFF.

Connect the power supply to a stable power source that is not prone to power fluctuations.

The three-phase power supply consists of 200/220VAC at 60Hz and 200VAC at 50Hz.





4.2.2 Noise Filter Installation

Insert the three-phase noise filter into the primary station of the non-fuse breaker filter if you hear noise coming from the power source.

Seal up each cable opening so that dust does not enter.

Fig. 4-3: Connection of Three-Phase Noise Filter



4.2 Power Supply

4.2.3 Leakage Breaker Installation

When connecting the leakage breaker to the controller power supply wiring, use a leakage breaker which can handle high frequencies from the DX100 inverter. Leakage breakers which cannot handle high frequencies may malfunction.

Table 4-1: Example of High Frequency Leakage Breaker

Maker	Model
Mitsubishi Electric Co., Ltd.	NV series (manufactured since 1988)
Fuji Electric Co., Ltd.	EG or SG Series (manufactured since 1984)

Even with a leakage breaker installed, there is still a possibility of some high frequency current leakage from the DX100 inverter. However, this current leakage presents no safety risks.

Fig. 4-4: Connection of the Leakage Breaker



4 Connection4.2 Power Supply

4.2.4 Primary Power Supply Breaker Installation

Install the primary power supply breaker as shown.

Fig. 4-5: Installation of the Primary Power Supply Breaker



Table 4-2: DX100 Power Capacity, Cable Sizes, and Breaker Capacities

Manipulator	Power capacity (kVA)	Cable size (size of terminal) (In case of Cabtyre cable (three cores)) (mm ²)	Capacity of breaker in DX100 (A)
MH5, MH5L	1	3.5 (M5)	15
MH6, MA1400N VA1400	1.5	3.5 (M5)	15
HP20D, HP20D-6 MA1900	2.0	3.5 (M5)	15
MH50, MS80	4.0	5.5 (M5)	30
VS50, SIA50D, ES165D, ES200D	5.0	5.5 (M5)	30

The maximum load value (payload, operation speed, and frequency, etc.) is displayed.

However, the power capacity is different depending on work conditions.

Inquire at the nearest branch office listed on the back cover for information when selecting the transformer.

- 4 Connection
- 4.3 Connection Methods

4.3 Connection Methods

A connection diagram for the manipulator, manipulator cable, primary power cable and programming pendant is shown below.





4.3.1 Connecting the Primary Power Supply

- 1. Open the front door of the DX100.
 - (1) Using a flathead screwdriver, rotate the door locks on the front of the DX100 (two places) 90 degrees clockwise.





- 4 Connection
- 4.3 Connection Methods
 - (2) Rotate the main power supply switch to the "OFF" position and open the door gently.
- Fig. 4-8: Rotating the Main Power Supply Switch to the OFF Position



- 2. Confirm that the primary power supply is OFF.
- 3. Connect the primary power supply cable.
 - Draw the primary power supply cable in from the cable entrance on top side of DX100 and fix it firmly with the cable clamp so that it won't shift or slip out of place.
- Fig. 4-9: Cable Clamp





- 4 Connection
- 4.3 Connection Methods
 - (1) Pull off the primary cover of the switch which is on the upper right side of the DX100.
- Fig. 4-10: Pulling Off the Cover



- (2) Connect a ground wire to reduce noise and prevent electric shock.
 - I) Connect the ground wire to the ground terminal (screw) of the switch which is on the upper left side of DX100.

Fig. 4-11: Connection of the Ground Wire



4 Connection

4.3 Connection Methods

II) Perform grounding in accordance with all relevant local and national electrical codes. The size of ground wire must the same as listed on *table 4-2 "DX100 Power Capacity, Cable Sizes, and Breaker Capacities" at page 4-5.*









(3) Connect the primary power supply cable.

Fig. 4-13: Connection of the Primary Power Supply Cable



4 Connection

4.3 Connection Methods

(4) Install the cover.

Fig. 4-14: Install the Cover



- 4 Connection
- 4.3 Connection Methods

4.3.2 Connecting the Manipulator Cable

- 1. Remove the package, and take out the manipulator cable. Connect the cable to the connectors on the back side of DX100.
- Fig. 4-15: Connection of the Manipulator Cable





For more information on connecting the manipulator cable, please refer to the Instruction Manual which corresponds to the particular DX100 model.

- 2. Connect the manipulator to the DX100.
 - Confirm the shape and size of the cable connector, the key fitting, and the position of the pins of the manipulator. Push the cable connector into the manipulator side connector firmly, and tighten securely.
- 3. Close the DX100 door.
 - (1) Close the door gently.
 - (2) Rotate the door lock counterclockwise 90 degrees.
- Fig. 4-16: Rotating the Door Lock Counterclockwise



4 Connection

4.3 Connection Methods



Always close the door of the controller (DX100) except for maintenance.

Make sure to rotate all the door locks counterclockwise.

If dust or water enter inside the controller, electric shock or breakdown of DX100 may result.

4.3.3 Connecting the Programming Pendant

- 1. Connect the programming pendant cable to the connector on the door lower right side of the controller cabinet.
- Fig. 4-17: Connecting the Programming Pendant



- The manipulator, DX100, and the programming pendant connections are now complete.

- 5 Turning ON and OFF the Power Supply
- 5.1 Turning ON the Main Power Supply

5 Turning ON and OFF the Power Supply

5.1 Turning ON the Main Power Supply



The main power supply is turned ON when the main power supply switch on the front of the DX100 is turned to the "ON" position, and the initial diagnosis and the current position setting begin.

Fig. 5-1: Turning ON the Main Power Supply



00

- 5 Turning ON and OFF the Power Supply
- 5.1 Turning ON the Main Power Supply

5.1.1 Initial Diagnosis

The initial diagnosis are performed in the DX100 when main power is turned ON, and the startup window is shown on the programming pendant screen.

Fig. 5-2: Startup Window



5.1.2 When Initial Diagnosis are Complete

When the power supply is turned OFF, the DX100 saves all condition data, including:

- Mode of operation
- Called job (active job if the DX100 is in the play mode; edit job if the DX100 is in the teach mode) and the cursor position in the job.
- Fig. 5-3: Initial Window



Turning ON and OFF the Power Supply

5.2 Turning ON the Servo Power

5.2 Turning ON the Servo Power

5

5.2.1 During Play Mode

The worker's safety is secure if the safety plug is turned ON.

• When the safeguarding is closed, press [SERVO ON READY] on the programming pendant to turn ON the servo power supply. [SERVO ON] lamp will light, when the servo power is turned ON.





When the safeguarding is open, the servo power supply cannot be turned ON.

5.2.2 During Teach Mode

1. Press [SERVO ON READY] on the programming pendant to turn ON the servo power supply. [SERVO ON] lamp will flicker when the servo power is turned ON.



2. The servo power is turned ON and [SERVO ON] lamp on the programming pendant lights when the operator grips the Enable switch.



DX100





When performing emergency stop on the front door of the DX100, programming pendant, or external signal, the servo power-on operation from the Enable switch is cancelled. When turning the power back ON, follow the previously listed instructions.

- 5 Turning ON and OFF the Power Supply
- 5.3 Turning OFF the Power Supply

5.3 Turning OFF the Power Supply

5.3.1 Turning OFF the Servo Power (Emergency Stop)

The manipulator cannot be operated when the emergency stop button is pressed and the servo power supply is turned OFF.

• Press the emergency stop button and the servo power supply is turned off.

The emergency stop buttons are located on the front door of the DX100 and on the right side of the programming pendant.

 The brake operates once the servo power supply is turned OFF, and the manipulator can no longer operate.
 The emergency stop mode can be operated at any mode. (Teach mode, Play mode, Remote mode)



5.3.2 Turning OFF the Main Power

After turning OFF the servo power, turn OFF the main power.

• When the main power switch on the front of DX100 is turned to the "OFF" position, the main power is turned OFF.



6 Test of Program Operation

6



6 Test of Program Operation6.1 Movement of the Axes

DX100



- Check for problems in manipulator movement.
- Check for damage to the insulation and sheathing of external wires.
- Always return the programming pendant to its specified position after use.

If the programming pendant is inadvertently left on the manipulator, fixture, or on the floor, the manipulator or a tool could collide with it during manipulator movement, possibly causing injuries or equipment damage.

6.1 Movement of the Axes

Move each axis of the manipulator by pressing the axis keys on the programming pendant.

This figure illustrates each axis of motion in the joint coordinates.



Be sure to remove all items from the area before moving the manipulator.

Refer to the INSTRUCTION MANUAL for the appropriate position of the fixture.



6 Test of Program Operation6.1 Movement of the Axes





System Up

7 Security System

7.1 Protection Through Security Mode Settings

7 Security System

7.1 Protection Through Security Mode Settings

The DX100 modes setting are protected by a security system. The system allows operation and modification of settings according to operator clearance. Be sure operators have the correct level of training for each level to which they are granted access.

7.1.1 Security Mode

There are three security modes. Editing mode and management mode require a user ID. The user ID consists of numbers and letters, and contains no less than 4 and no more than 8 characters. (Significant numbers and signs: "0 to 9", "-", ".".

Table 7	7-1: Securit	y Mode	Descri	iptions
---------	--------------	--------	--------	---------

Security Mode	Explanation
Operation Mode	This mode allows basic operation of the robot (stopping, starting, etc.) for people operating the robot work on the line.
Editing Mode	This mode allows the operator to teach and edit jobs and robot settings.
Management Mode	This mode allows those authorized to set up and maintain robot system: parameters, system time and modifying user IDs.

7 Security System7.1 Protection Through Security Mode Settings

Main Menu	Sub Menu	Allowed Secu	Allowed Security Mode		
		DISPLAY	EDIT		
JOB	JOB	Operation	Edit		
	SELECT JOB	Operation	Operation		
	CREATE NEW JOB ¹⁾	Edit	Edit		
	MASTER JOB	Operation	Edit		
	JOB CAPACITY	Operation	-		
	RES. START (JOB) ¹⁾	Edit	Edit		
	RES. STATUS ²⁾	Operation	-		
	CYCLE	Operation	Operation		
VARIABLE	BYTE	Operation	Edit		
	INTEGER	Operation	Edit		
	DOUBLE	Operation	Edit		
	REAL	Operation	Edit		
	STRING	Operation	Edit		
	POSITION (ROBOT)	Operation	Edit		
	POSITION (BASE)	Operation	Edit		
	POSITION (ST)	Operation	Edit		
	LOCAL VARIABLE	Operation	-		
IN/OUT	EXTERNAL INPUT	Operation	-		
	EXTERNAL OUTPUT	Operation	-		
	UNIVERSAL INPUT	Operation	Edit		
	UNIVERSAL OUTPUT	Operation	Edit		
	SPECIFIC INPUT	Operation	-		
	SPECIFIC OUTPUT	Operation	-		
	RIN	Operation	-		
	CPRIN	Operation	-		
	REGISTER	Operation	-		
	AUXILIARY RELAY	Operation	-		
	CONTROL INPUT	Operation	-		
	PSEUDO INPUT SIG	Operation	Management		
	NETWORK INPUT	Operation	-		
	NETWORK OUTPUT	Operation	-		
	ANALOG OUTPUT	Operation	-		
	SV POWER STATUS	Operation	-		
	LADDER PROGRAM	Management	Management		
	I/O ALARM	Management	Management		
	I/O MESSAGE	Management	Management		

 Table 7-2: Menu & Security Mode (Sheet 1 of 3)

7 7.1 Security System Protection Through Security Mode Settings

Table 7-2: Menu &	& Security	Mode	(Sheet 2 of 3)
			/

	y (,	
ROBOT	CURRENT POSITION	Operation	-
	COMMAND POSITION	Operation	-
	SERVO MONITOR	Management	-
	WORK HOME POS	Operation	Edit
	SECOND HOME POS	Operation	Edit
	DROP AMOUNT	Management	Management
	POWER ON/OFF POS	Operation	-
	TOOL	Edit	Edit
	INTERFERENCE	Management	Management
	SHOCK SENS LEVEL	Operation	Management
	USER COORDINATE	Edit	Edit
	HOME POSITION	Management	Management
	MANIPULATOR TYPE	Management	-
	ANALOG MONITOR	Management	Management
	OVERRUN&S-SENSOR ¹⁾	Edit	Edit
	LIMIT RELEASE ¹⁾	Edit	Edit
	ARM CONTROL ¹⁾	Management	Management
	SHIFT VALUE	Operation	-
SYSTEM INFO	VERSION	Operation	-
	MONITORING TIME	Operation	Management
	ALARM HISTORY	Operation	Management
	I/O MSG HISTORY	Operation	Management
	SECURITY	Operation	Operation
FD/CF	LOAD	Edit	-
	SAVE	Operation	-
	VERIFY	Operation	-
	DELETE	Operation	-
	DEVICE	Operation	Operation
	FOLDER	Edit	Management
	INITIALIZE ²⁾	Operation	-
PARAMETER	S1CxG	Management	Management
	S2C	Management	Management
	S3C	Management	Management
	S4C	Management	Management
	A1P	Management	Management
	A2P	Management	Management
	A3P	Management	Management
	A4P	Management	Management
	RS	Management	Management
	S1E	Management	Management
	S2E	Management	Management
	S3E	Management	Management
	S4E	Management	Management

7 Security System

Protection Through Security Mode Settings 7.1

SETUP	TEACHING COND	Edit	Edit
	OPERATE COND	Management	Management
	DATE/TIME	Management	Management
	GRP COMBINATION ³⁾	Management	Management
	RESERVE JOB NAME	Edit	Edit
	USER ID	Edit	Edit
	SET SPEED	Management	Management
	KEY ALLOCATION ¹⁾	Management	Management
	RES. START (CNCT)	Management	Management
	AUTO BACK SET	Management	Management
	WRONG DATA LOG	Operation	Management
ARC	ARC START COND.	Operation	Edit
WELDING	ARC END COND.	Operation	Edit
	ARC AUX COND.	Operation	Edit
	POWER SOURCE COND.	Operation	Edit
	ARC WELD DIAG.	Operation	Edit
	WEAVING	Operation	Edit
	ARC MONITOR ⁴⁾	Operation	-
	ARC MONITOR (SAMPL)	Operation	-
HANDLING	HANDLING DIAGNOSIS	Operation	Edit
SPOT	WELD DIAGNOSIS	Operation	Edit
WELDING	I/O ALLOCATION	Management	Management
	GUN CONDITION	Management	Management
	CLEARANCE SETTING	Operation	Edit
	POWER SOURCE COND	Management	Management
SPOT	WELD DIAGNOSIS	Operation	Edit
	GUN PRESSURE	Edit	Edit
	PRESSURE	Edit	Edit
	I/O ALLOCATION	Management	Management
	GUN CONDITION	Management	Management
	CLEARANCE SETTING	Operation	Edit
	SPOT POWER SOURCE COND	Management	Management
	TIP INSTALLATION	Operation	Management
GENERAL	WEAVING	Operation	Edit
	GENERAL DIAG.	Operation	Edit
COMMON TO ALL	I/O VARIABLE CUSTOMIZE	Operation	Operation

Displayed in the teach mode only.
 It is possible to initialize a floppy at FC1/FC2.
 Displayed only with two or more control groups.
 Displayed in the teach mode only.
 *Data is cleared in the edit mode or higher.

- 7 Security System
- 7.1 Protection Through Security Mode Settings
- 7.1.1.1 Changing the Security Mode
 - 1. Select {SYSTEM INFO} under the main menu.
 - The sub menu appears.

	12 🗹 🏍 🗟 📑 👘
JOB DOT MODE ARC WELDING	Please select a Main Menu.
VARIABLE B001	VERSION
	S MONITORING TIME
ROBOT	e Alarm History
SYSTEM INFO	I/O MSG HISTORY
	SECURITY
Main Menu	Simple Menu

Note: Icons for the main menu such as arc welding system differ depending on the system being used.

- 2. Select {SECURITY}.
 - The selection window of security mode appears.

DATA	EDIT	DISPLAY	UTILITY	12 🗹 📶 😣	12 🖓 👘
SECURITY		-			
MODE	EDIT	ING MODE			
		_			
Main Menu	JSimp	le Menu			

- 7 Security System
- 7.1 Protection Through Security Mode Settings
- 3. Press [SELECT] .
 - Select "SECURITY MODE".

	DIT DISPLAY UTILITY 12 🗹 😒 🚾 📮 🙌
MODE	OPERATION MODE EDITING MODE MANAGEMENT MODE
Main Menu	Simple Menu

- 4. Input the user ID.
 - The user ID input window appears.

DATA	EDIT	DISPLAY	UTILITY	12	2 🖌 😣	10 📮 🗄	
SECURITY							
MODE	Password	8	3				
Main Menu	JSimpl	e Menu	🊺 Input	current I) no.(4 to 8	digits)	



- 5. Press [ENTER].
 - The input user ID is compared with the user ID of the selected security mode.]
 - When the correct user ID is entered, the security mode is changed.

- 7 Security System
- 7.1 Protection Through Security Mode Settings

7.1.2 User ID

User ID is requested when Editing Mode or Management Mode is operated.

Create the user ID with four to eight numbers and symbols: the numbers 0 to 9; the symbols "-" and ".".

7.1.2.1 Changing User ID

In order to change the user ID, the DX100 must be in Editing Mode or Management Mode. Higher security modes can make changes the user ID of to lower security modes.

- 1. Select {SETUP} under the main menu.
 - The sub menu appears.



- 2. Select {USER ID}.
 - The USER ID window appears.

DATA	EDIT	DISPLAY	UTILITY	12 🗹 🖬 😣	10 🖳 🙌
USER ID			-		
EDITING	MODE	*****			
MANAGEME	ENT MODE	****			
Main Menu	J Simp	le Menu			

- 7 Security System
- 7.1 Protection Through Security Mode Settings
- 3. Select the desired ID.
 - The character input line appears, and a message "Input current ID no. (4 to 8 digits)" appears.

DATA	EDIT	DISPLAY	UTILITY	12 🗳 🖬 😣	10 🕞 🙌
USER ID					
EDITING MANAGEME	MODE Pass ENT MODE	sword= ********			
	1				
Main Menu	J Simp	le Menu	i) Input ci	urrent ID no.(4 to 8	digits)

- 4. Input the current ID and press [ENTER].
 - When the correct user ID is entered, a new ID is requested to be input. "Input new ID no.(4 to 8 digits)" appears.

DATA	EDIT	DISPLAY	UTILITY	12 🗹 📶 😣	10 🕞 🙌
USER ID		· · ·			
EDITING MANAGEM	MODE Pass ENT MODE	**************************************			
Main Men	J Simp	le Menu 🤇) Input ne	w ID no.(4 to 8 digi	ts)

- 5. Input new ID and press [ENTER].
 - User ID is changed.

8

8 System Setup



- 8
- System Setup Home Position Calibration 8.1

8.1 **Home Position Calibration**

	WARNING
•	Before operating the manipulator, check that the SERVO ON lamp goes out when the emergency stop buttons on the right of the front door of the DX100 and the programming pendant are pressed.
Inji sto	ury or damage to machinery may result if the manipulator cannot be opped in case of an emergency.
•	Observe the following precautions when performing teaching operations within the P-point maximum envelope of the manipulator:
	 View the manipulator from the front whenever possible.
	 Always follow the predetermined operating procedure.
	 Always prepare your reactions to a manipulator's unexpected approach toward you.
	 Ensure that you have a safe place to retreat in case of emergency.
Im	proper or unintended manipulator operation may result in injury.
•	Prior to performing the following operations, be sure that no one is in the P-point maximum envelope of the manipulator, and be sure that you are in a safe place when:
	 Turning ON the DX100 power.
	 Operating the manipulator with the programming pendant.
Inji P-j	ury may result from contact with the manipulator if persons enter the point maximum envelope of the manipulator.
Alv pro	ways press the emergency stop button immediately if there are oblems.
En DX	nergency stop buttons are located on the right of the front door of the (100 and the programming pendant.

8.1 Home Position Calibration



- Perform the following inspection procedures prior to teaching the manipulator. If problems are found, correct them immediately, and be sure that all other necessary tasks have been performed.
 - Check for problems in manipulator movement.
 - Check for damage to the insulation and sheathing of external wires.
 - Always return the programming pendant to its hook on the DX100 cabinet after use.

If the programming pendant is inadvertently left on the manipulator, a fixture, or on the floor, the manipulator or a tool could collide with it during manipulator movement, possibly causing injury or equipment damage.

8.1.1 Home Position Calibration



Teaching and playback are not possible before the completion of the home position calibration.

In a system with two or more manipulators, the home position of all the manipulators must be calibrated before starting teaching or playback.

Home position calibration is an operation in which the home position and absolute encoder position coincide. Although this operation is performed prior to shipment at the factory, the following cases require this operation to be performed again.

- · Change in the combination of the manipulator and DX100
- · Replacement of the motor or absolute encoder
- Clearing stored memory (by replacement of NIF01 circuit board, weak battery, etc.)
- Home position deviation caused by hitting the manipulator against a workpiece, etc.

To calibrate the home position, use the axis keys to calibrate the home position mark on each axis so that the manipulator can take its posture for the home position. There are two operations for home position calibration:

- All the axes can be moved at the same time: Recalibrate the home
 - position by moving all the axes together if changing the combination of manipulator and circuit board.
- Axes can be moved individually: Recalibrate the home position for the individual axes that were affected by the replacement, if replacing the motor or absolute encoder.

- 8 System Setup
- 8.1 Home Position Calibration

If the absolute data of its posture for the home position is already known, set the absolute data again after completing home position registration.

Home Position

The home position is the pulse value "0" for each axis and its posture. See *chapter 8.1.3 "Home Position of the Robot" at page 8-10.*

8.1.2 Calibrating Operation



SUPPLE

Home position calibration screen is displayed only in security mode or management mode.

8.1.2.1 Registering All Axes at One Time

- 1. Select {ROBOT} under the main menu.
 - The sub menu appears

DATA	EDIT DISPLAY	лтытү 🚺 🔀 🛃	1 👒 🔟 🖵 🙌
		* TOOL	OVERRUN AS-SENSOR
ARC WELDING	COMMAND POSITION		UIMIT RELEASE
VARIABLE	E SERVO MONITOR	SHOCK SENS	D ARM CONTROL
	WORK HOME POS	Ser coordinate	12 SHIFT VALUE
ROBOT	J르 SECOND HOME POS	HOME POSITION	
SYSTEM INFO	T DROP AMOUNT	MANIPULATOR TYPE	
	POWER ON/OFF POS	analog monitor	
Main Menu	Simple Menu		

- 2. Select {HOME POSITION}.
 - The HOME POSITIONING window appears.

DATA	EDIT	DISPLAY	UTILITY	12 🖻 📶 🕏	ð 🔟 🖳 👇	
	HOME	POSITIONIN	IG .ECT ABSOI	LUTE DATA		
ARC WELDIN				*		
VARIABLE B001				*		
ROBOT						
	°0					
Main Menu	J Simp	le Menu				

- 8 System Setup
- 8.1 Home Position Calibration
- 3. Select {DISPLAY} under the menu.
 - The pull-down menu appears.

DATA	EDIT	DISPLAY	UTILITY	12 🗹 🖬 🥫) 🔟 🕞 (b
JOB JOB ARC WELDING VARIABLE BOOT IN/OUT IN/OUT IN/OUT SYSTEM INFO	HOME RT :: L	ROBOT1 ROBOT2 Station1		UTE DATA * * * * *		
				PAGE		
Main Menu	Simp	le Menu				

 The same operation as the instruction 3 can also be performed by selecting {PAGE}, and selection box appears.

DATA	EDIT DISPLA	AY UTILITY	12 🖻 📶	👒 🔟 🖵 (†	
JOB	HOME POSITIO	INING SELECT ABSI	olute data		
ARC WELDING	R1 :S L U		*		
VARIABLE	R B T		*		
		~ L			
ROBOT					
SYSTEM INFO			R1:ROBO R2:ROBO S1-STAT	DT1 DT2 LION1	
			PAG	а́Е	
Main Menu	Simple Menu	<u> </u>			

- 4. Select the desired control group.
 - Select the control group for HOME POSITIONING.
 - The control group can also be selected by pressing page key

- 8 System Setup
- 8.1 Home Position Calibration
- 5. Select {EDIT} under the menu.
 - The pull-down menu appears.

DATA	EDIT	DISPLAY	UTILITY	12 🗹	1 😵 🖻	🕞 🖰	Þ
JOB DOUT MOVE	SELECT ALL AXIS		IG ECT ABSC	LUTE DATA			
ARC WELDI VARIABLE BOOT IN/OUT IN/OUT ROBOT SYSTEM INI		J () R () B () T ()		**************************************			
					PAGE		
Main Men	J Simp	le Menu					

- 6. Select {SELECT ALL AXES}.
 - The confirmation dialog box appears.

DATA	EDIT	DISPLAY	UTILITY	12	2 🖌 🕅	10	a 🕀	Þ
JOB	HOME	POSITIONIN	IG ECT ABSO	OLUTE D				
ARC WELDIN		5 J R			* *		_	
B001		Crea	ite home	posit	i on?			
		YES	;	N	0			
	0							
					PAGE			
Main Menu	Simp	le Menu						

- 7. Select {YES}.
 - Displayed position data of all axes are registered as home position.
 When {NO} is selected, the registration will be canceled.

- 8 System Setup
- 8.1 Home Position Calibration
- 8.1.2.2 Registering Individual Axes
 - 1. Select {ROBOT} under the main menu.
 - The sub menu appears.
 - 2. Select {HOME POSITION}.
 - 3. Select the desired control group.
 - Perform the step 3 and 4 of the "Registering All Axes at One Time" to select the desired control group.
 - 4. Select the axis to be registered.
 - Move the cursor to the axis to be registered, and select it.

DATA	EDIT DISPLAY	UTILITY	12 🗹 📶 👒 🔯	I 🗔 🙌 🖻
JOB JOB ARC WELDING VARIABLE BOOT IN/OUT IN/OUT IN/OUT SYSTEM INFO	HOME POSITION S R1 :S L U R B T		UTE DATA -278 30154 * -217 * *	
			PAGE	
Main Menu	Simple Menu			

- A confirmation dialog box appears.

DATA	EDIT DISPLAY		2 🗹 📶 🐝 🔟	📑 🕆
	HOME POSITIONIN SEI R1 :S C U R Cre: YE:	NG ECT ARSOLUTE	DATA -278 30154 * -217 t i on? NO	
			PAGE	
Main Menu	Simple Menu			

- 5. Select {YES}.
 - Displayed position data of the axis is registered as home position.
 When {NO} is selected, the registration will be canceled.
- 8 System Setup
- 8.1 Home Position Calibration

8.1.2.3 Changing the Absolute Data

To change the absolute data of the axis when home position calibration is completed, perform the following:

- 1. Select {ROBOT} under the main menu.
- 2. Select {HOME POSITION}.
- 3. Select the desired control group.
 - Perform the step 3 and 4 of the "Registering All Axes at One Time" to select the desired control group.
- 4. Select the absolute data to be registered.
 - The number can now be entered.

DATA	EDIT	DISPLAY	UTILITY	12 🛯	1 👒 🔟	🕞 🕀	Þ
JOB ARC VELDING VARIABLE BOOT IN/OUT IN/OUT NOBOT SYSTEM INFO	HOME PO		3 2000 2000 2000 2000 2000 2000 2000 20	LUTE DATA -278] 154 -29912 -217 7745 *]		
					PAGE		
Main Menu	Simple	Menu					

- 5. Enter the absolute data using the numeric keys.
- 6. Press [ENTER].
 - Absolute data is modified.

8.1.2.4 Clearing Absolute Data

- 1. Select {ROBOT} under the main menu.
 - The sub menu appears
- 2. Select {HOME POSITION}.
 - Perform the step 3 and 4 of the "Registering All Axes at One Time" to select the desired control group.
- 3. Select {DATA} under the main menu.

- 8 System Setup
- 8.1 Home Position Calibration

- The pull-down menu appears

DATA	E	DIT	DISPLAY	UTILITY	12	2 🖌 🔞	10	a 🕀	Þ
CLEAR ALL C	DATA	HOME F	POSITIONIN SEL	IG ECT ABSI)LUTE (DATA			
ARC WELDIN VARIABLE B001	NG	RI .S L U R B T			-29	270 0154 0912 -217 7745 *			
SYSTEM INF	=0								
						PAGE			
Main Menu	J	Simpl	e Menu						

- 4. Select [CLEAR ALL DATA].
 - A confirmation dialog box appears.



- 5. Select {YES}.
 - All absolute data are cleared.

DATA	EDIT	DISPLAY	UTILITY	12 🖻 🖢	1 👒 🔟	🕞 🖰	Þ
JOB JOB ARC WELDING VARIABLE BOOT IN/OUT IN/OUT ROBOT SYSTEM INFO	HOME R1 :S U R B T	POSITIONIN SELI C C C C C C C C		UTE DATA * * * * *			
					PAGE		
Main Menu	Simpl	e Menu					

- When {NO} is selected, the registration will be canceled.

- 8 System Setup
- 8.1 Home Position Calibration

8.1.3 Home Position of the Robot

In case of VA1400, the home position are as follows.





Other manipulator models have different positions. Always refer to "MANIPULATOR INSTRUCTIONS" for the correct manipulator model.

8 System Setup

8.2 Setting the Second Home Position (Check Point)

8.2 Setting the Second Home Position (Check Point)



8 System Setup

8.2 Setting the Second Home Position (Check Point)



• Always return the programming pendant to its hook on the DX100 cabinet after use.

If the programming pendant is inadvertently left on the manipulator, a fixture, or on the floor, the manipulator or a tool could collide with it during manipulator movement, possibly causing injury or equipment damage.

8.2.1 Purpose of Position Check Operation

If the absolute number of rotation detected at power supply ON does not match the data stored in the absolute encoder the last time the power supply was turned OFF, an alarm is issued when the controller power is turned ON.

There are two possible causes of this alarm:

- · Error in the PG system
- · The manipulator was moved after the power supply was turned OFF.

If there is an error with the PG system, the manipulator may stall when playback is started. If the absolute data allowable range error alarm has occurred, playback and test runs will not function and the position must be checked.

8 System Setup

8.2 Setting the Second Home Position (Check Point)



Position Check

After the "OUT OF RANGE (ABSO DATA)" alarm occurs, move to the second home position using the axis keys and perform the position confirmation. Playback, test runs, and FWD operation will not function unless "CONFIRM POSITION" is performed.

② Pulse Difference Check

The pulse number at the second home position is compared with that at the current position. If the difference is within the allowable range, playback is enabled. If not, the alarm occurs again.

- The allowable range pulse is the number of pulses per rotation of the motor (PPR data).
- The initial value of the second home position is the home position (where all axes are at pulse 0). The second home position can be changed. For details, refer to *chapter 8.2.2 "Procedure for the Second Home Position Setting (Check Point)" at page 8-14.*

8 System Setup

8.2 Setting the Second Home Position (Check Point)

③ Alarm Occurrence

If the alarm occurs again, there may be an error in the PG system. Check the system. After adjusting the erroneous axis, calibrate the home position of the axis, then check the position again.

Home position calibration of all the axes at the same time enables playback operations without having to check the position.
 Sometimes in a system with a manipulator with no brake, it is possible to enable playback without position checking after the alarm occurs. However, as a rule, always perform "CONFIRM POSITION". Under the above special conditions, the manipulator moves as follows:

- After the start, the manipulator moves at low speed (1/ 10 of the maximum speed) to the step indicated by the cursor. If it stops and restarts during this motion, the low speed setting is retained until the step at cursor is reached.
 - Regardless of cycle setting, the manipulator stops after reaching to the step indicated by cursor. Starting the manipulator again then moves it at the programmed speed and cycle of the job.

8.2.2 Procedure for the Second Home Position Setting (Check Point)

NOTE

Apart from the "home position" of the manipulator, the second home position can be set up as a check point for absolute data. Use the following steps to set the specified point.

If two or more manipulators or stations are controlled by one controller, the second home position must be set for each manipulator or station.

- 1. Select {ROBOT} under the main menu.
 - EDIT DISPLAY UTILITY 12 🗳 📶 😣 🔯 📑 👆 DATA SECURITY DOUT MOVE 😫 USER COORDINATE CURRENT POSITION ARC WELDING COMMAND POSITION VERRUN &S-SENSOR VARIABLE 🔣 WORK HOME POS 😈 LIMIT RELEASE B001 IN/OUT 12 SECOND HOME POS 上 SHIFT VALUE ଚ୍ଚ POWER ON/OFF A SYSTEM 🛷 тооl V SHOCK SENS
 - The sub menu appears.

- 8 System Setup
- 8.2 Setting the Second Home Position (Check Point)
- 2. Select {SECOND HOME POS}.
 - The SECOND HOME POS window appears.
 A message "Available to move to and modify specified point" is displayed.

DATA	EDIT	DISPLAY	UTILITY	12 🗹 🖞	1 👒 🖻	🕞 🕀	Þ
ARC WELDING	R1 :	ND HOME POS SPEC S L U R B T	IFIED 0 0 0 0 0 0 0	CURRENT 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0	DIFFEF	RENCE 0 0 0 0 0 0	
					PAGE		
Main Menu	Sim	ple Menu	į Availabl	e to move to	and modify	specified p	oint

- 3. Press the page key , or select {PAGE} to display the selection window for the control group.
 - When there are two or more group axes, select the group axes to which the second home position is to be specified.

DATA	EDIT	DISPLAY	UTILITY	12 🗹 📶	😪 🔟 🗔 (b
JOB	SEC	OND HOME POS SPEC	IFIED	CURRENT	DIFFERENCE	
ARC WELDING	R1	:S L U	0 0 0	0 0 0	0 0 0	
VARIABLE B001		R B T	0 0 0	0 0 0	0 0 0	
ROBOT						
SYSTEM INFO				R1:ROB R2:ROB S1:STA	OT1 OT2 TION1	
	·			PA	GE	
Main Menu	Sin	ple Menu	į Availabl	e to move to ar	nd modify specif	ied point

- 4. Press the axis keys.
 - Move the manipulator to the new second home position.
- 5. Press [MODIFY], then [ENTER].
 - The second home position is changed.

8 System Setup

8.2 Setting the Second Home Position (Check Point)

8.2.3 Procedure after the Alarm



 Be aware of safety hazards when performing the position confirmation of the specified point.

Abnormality of the PG system may be the cause of the alarm. The manipulator may operate in an unexpected manner, and there is a risk of damage to equipment or injury to personnel.

If the "OUT OF RANGE (ABSO DATA)" alarm occurs:

- Reset the alarm;
- Turn ON the servo power;

then confirm the second home position. After the confirmation, if the PG system is found to be the cause of the alarm, perform the necessary operation, such as replacing the PG, etc.

The robot current position data when turning main power supply OFF and ON can be confirmed in "POWER ON/OFF POS" window.



- 1. Select {ROBOT} under the main menu.
 - The sub menu appears.
- 2. Select {SECOND HOME POS}.
 - The SECOND HOME POS window appears.

DATA	EDIT	DISPLAY	UTILITY	12	2 📶	8 🔞	📮 🙌	Þ
JOB ARC WELDING VARIABLE BOOT IN/OUT IN/OUT ROBOT SYSTEM INFO	SECONI R1 :S U R B T) Home Pos Spec	IF IED 0 0 0 0 0 0	CUR	RENT 0 0 0 0 0	DIFFER	ENCE 0 0 0 0 0 0	
					PAG			
Main Menu	Simple	e Menu	횢 Available	e to mo	ve to and	modify	specified	point

3. Press the page key , or select {PAGE} to display the selection window for the control group.

- 8 System Setup
- 8.2 Setting the Second Home Position (Check Point)
 - When there are two or more group axes, select the group axes to which the second home position is to be specified.

DATA	EDIT D	ISPLAY	UTILITY	12 🗷 네	😪 🔯	📑 🕀	Þ
	SECOND H	OME POS SPECIF	IED	CURRENT	DIFFER	ENCE	
ARC WELDING	R1 :S L U		0 0 0	0 0 0		0 0 0	
VARIABLE	R B T		0 0 0	0 0 0		0 0	
			0	Ū		Ŭ	
ROBOT							
SYSTEM INFO				R1:R0B R2:R0B S1:STA	DT1 DT2 FION1		
				PA	ìΕ		
Main Menu	Simple M	enu 🤅	Availabl	e to move to an	d modify s	specified po	int

- 4. Press [FWD].
 - TCP moves to the second home position. The robot moving speed is set as selected manual speed.
- 5. Select {DATA} under the menu.
- 6. Select {CONFIRM POSITION}.
 - A message "Home position checked" appears.
 - Pulse data of the second home position and current pulse data are compared. If the compared error is in allowed range, playback operation can be done.
 - If the error is beyond the allowed range, the alarm occurs again.

8 System Setup

8.3 Tool Data Setting

8.3 Tool Data Setting

8.3.1 Registering Tool Files

8.3.1.1 Number of Tool Files

There are 64 tool files numbered 0 to 63. Each file is called as a tool file.





8.3.1.2 Registering Coordinate Data

When the number input operation is used for registering the tool file, input the TCP of the tool on the flange coordinates.



1. Select {ROBOT} under the main menu.

- 8 System Setup
- 8.3 Tool Data Setting
 - The sub menu appears.

		12 🖬 🖌	1 🥴 🔟 🖵 🙌
JOB DOUT MOVE	CURRENT POSITION	Ser coordinate	
ARC WELDING	COMMAND POSITION	OVERRUN &S-SENSOR	
VARIABLE B001	WORK HOME POS	JIMIT RELEASE	
	E SECOND HOME POS	나는 SHIFT VALUE	
ROBOT	POWER ON/OFF POS		
SYSTEM INFO	3 TOOL		
	SHOCK SENS		
Main Menu	Simple Menu		

- 2. Select {TOOL}.
 - (1) Move the cursor to the number of the desired tool, and press {SELECT} in the tool list window.
 - (2) The tool coordinate window of the selected number appears.
 - In the tool coordinate window, the tool number can be changed by

pressing the page key in or selecting {PAGE} .



- To switch the tool list window and the tool coordinate window, press $\{DISPLAY\} \rightarrow \{LIST\}$ or $\{DISPLAY\} \rightarrow \{COORDINATE DATA\}$.



- 3. Select the desired tool number.
- 4. Place the cursor in the part to register the desired coordinate data and press [SELECT].
 - The number is ready to input.
- 5. Input the coordinate data.
- 6. Press [ENTER].

8 System Setup

8.3 Tool Data Setting

- The coordinate data is registered.



<Setting Example>







In case of Tool C



8.3 Tool Data Setting

8.3.1.3 Registering Tool Angle

The tool pose data is angle data which shows the relation between the flange coordinates and the tool coordinates. The angle when the flange coordinates are rotated to meet to the tool coordinates becomes an input value. Clockwise toward the arrow is the positive direction. Register in the order of $Rz \rightarrow Ry \rightarrow Rx$.

In the following case, register Rz=180, Ry=90, Rx=0



- 1. Select {ROBOT} under the main menu.
- 2. Select {TOOL}.
- 3. Select the desired tool number.
 - In the same way as shown in Explanation 2, 3 in chapter 8.3.1.2 "Registering Coordinate Data" at page 8-18, display the desired tool coordinate window.
- 4. Select the desired coordinate axis to modify.
 - First, select Rz.
- 5. Input the tool pose data.
 - Input rotation angle around Z_F of the flange coordinates.





6. Press [ENTER].

- The rotation angle of Rz is registered.

In the same way, register the angle of Ry, Rx.

- 8 System Setup
- 8.3 Tool Data Setting

Ry must be the input rotation angle around Y'_F flange coordinates.



 Rx must be the input rotation angle around X'_F of flange coordinates.





8.3.1.4 Setting the Tool Load Information

The tool load information includes weight, a center of gravity position, and moment of inertia at the center of gravity of the tool installed at the flange.



For more details on the tool load information, refer to chapter 8.4.3 "Tool Load Information Setting" at page 8-43

System Setup 8.3 Tool Data Setting

8.3.2 Tool Calibration

8.3.2.1 Tool Calibration

To ensure that the manipulator can perform motion type operations such as linear and circular motion type correctly, accurate dimensional information on tools such as torches, tools, and guns must be registered and the position of the TCP must be defined.

Tool calibration is a function that enables this dimensional information to be registered easily and accurately. When this function is used, the TCP is automatically calculated and registered in the tool file.

What is registered in tool calibration is the coordinates of the TCP and the tool posture data in the flange coordinates.



8.3.2.2 Setting of Tool Calibration Method

There are three tool calibration methods, which are selected by setting parameter.

S2C432: Designation of tool calibration method

- 0: Calibrates only the coordinates. "Coordinates" calculated from 5 calibration teaching points is registered in the tool file. In this case "Tool Posture Data" is all cleared to be 0.00.
- 1: Calibrates only the posture.

"Tool Posture Data" calculated from the first calibration teaching point is registered in the tool file. In this case, "Coodinates" will not be changed. (the prior value is maintained.)

2: Calibrates the coordinates and the posture.

"Coordinates" calculated from 5 calibration teaching points and "Tool Posture Data" calculated from the first calibration teaching point are registered in the tool file.

DX100	8 Syst 8.3 Tool	em Setup Data Setting
		 In case of S2C432=0 (only coordiantes is calibrated), tool posture data is overwritten with 0. (When the coordinates calculated from tool calibration is registered in the tool file in which the tool posture data is already registered, the tool posture data will be deleted.)
		 In case of S2C432=1 (only posture is calibrated), the coordinates are maintained.
		 In case of S2C432=1, 5 teaching points need to be registered though only the first point is used for calculation.

8.3.2.3 Teaching of Calibration Point

Teaching for defining coordinates

In order to calibrate coordinates, five different postures (TC1 to 5) must be taught with the TCP as the reference point. The tool dimensions are automatically calculated on the basis of these five points.



Each posture must be arbitrary. Accuracy may decrease when pose setting is rotated in a constant direction

Teaching for defining posture

The calibration of tool posture data is performed with the first calibration teaching point (TC1).

Teach TC1 with Z-axis of the desired tool coordinates downward vertically to the ground. (the Z-axis of the tool coordinates is parallel to the Z-axis of the base tool and points to the opposite direction.)

Tool posture data is automatically calcurated with this TC1 posture.

- 8 System Setup
- 8.3 Tool Data Setting



7-

Base

Coordinates

Υ

The X-axis of the tool coordinates is defined in the same direction as the





• If there is more than one tool, for example when using a multihand, use the tool numbers in the order of 0, 1, 2, etc.

SUPPLE

8 System Setup

8.3 Tool Data Setting

- 1. Select {ROBOT} under the main menu.
- 2. Select {TOOL}.
- 3. Select the desired tool number.
 - In the same way as shown in the instruction 2 and 3 of the chapter 8.3.1.2 "Registering Coordinate Data" at page 8-18, display the desired tool coordinate window.

DATA	DISPLAY	UTILITY	12 🖻 🖌 % 🔯	🤿 (†
JOB JOB ARC WELDING WARIABLE BOOT IN/OUT IN/OUT IN/OUT SYSTEM INFO	TOOL NO. : (NAME STAN X Y Z Z W Xg Yg Zg	2 64 <u>JARD TOL</u> 0.000 mm R 0.000 mm R 0.000 kg 0.000 kg 0.000 mm I 0.000 mm I 0.000 mm I	 x 0.0000 deg. x 0.0000 deg. x 0.0000 deg. x 0.0000 kg.m2 y 0.0000 kg.m2 z 0.0000 kg.m2 	
			PAGE	
Main Menu	Simple Menu			

- 4. Select {UTILITY} under the menu.
 - The pull-down menu appears.

DATA E	EDIT DISPLAY		e 🕑 📶 🤜 🔞	🕞 († 🕨
JOB MOT ARC WELDING VARIABLE	TOOL TOOL NO. : NAME STAN X Y Z	CALIBRATION CALIBR	0.0000 deg. 0.0000 deg. 0.0000 deg.	
BOO1 IN/OUT IN/OUT ROBOT	W Xg Yg Zg	0.000 kg 0.000 mm Ix 0.000 mm Iy 0.000 mm Iz	0.000 kg.m2 0.000 kg.m2 0.000 kg.m2	
SYSTEM INFO			PAGE	
Main Menu	Simple Menu		THOL	

- 8 System Setup
- 8.3 Tool Data Setting
- 5. Select {CALIBRATION}.
 - The TOOL CALIBRATION window is shown.

DATA E	DIT	UTILITY	12 🗹 🐋 🐼 🕞 🕀
JOB ARC WELDING VARIABLE BOOT IN/OUT IN/OUT IN/OUT ROBOT SYSTEM INFO SYSTEM INFO	TOOL CALIBRATIO TOOL NO.: 00 HERK:S U R B T T	N * PO * <s * TC * TC * TC * TC TC</s 	SITION TCT TATUS> 1 : O 2 : O 3 : O 4 : O 5 : O
	COMPLETE	CANCEL	
Main Menu	Simple Menu		

- 6. Select the robot.
 - (1) Select the robot to calibrate.(When the robot has already been selected or there is only one of robot, this operation should not be performed.)
 - (2) Select "**" in the TOOL CALIBRATION window and select the robot in the shown selection dialog box.
 - (3) The robot is set.

DATA	EDIT	DISPLAY	UTILITY	12	2 🖌 😣 🔟	📮 (h
JOB ARC WELDING VARIABLE BOOT IN/OUT IN/OUT BOBOT SYSTEM INFO		CALIBRATIO	N ** ** **	POSIT <stat TC1 TC2 TC3 TC4 TC5</stat 	TION [[C]] TU\$> ∶ ○ ∶ ○ ∶ ○ ∶ ○	
	C	DMPLETE	CANCEL	-		
Main Menu	Simp	le Menu				

8 System Setup

8.3 Tool Data Setting

- 7. Select "POSITION".
 - The selection dialog box is shown.
 - (1) Select the teaching point for calibration.

DATA	EDIT	DISPLAY	UTILITY	12 🛙	2 📶 🐝 🔟	📮 (†)
		CALIBRATIO DL NO.: 00 S	N *	POSITIO	N TTT	
ARC WELDIN		- J R	* * *	<status TC1 : TC2 :</status 	⇒ TC2 ⊂TC3 ⊂TC4	
VARIABLE B001		З Г	* *	TC3 : TC4 : TC5 :	0	
ROBOT						
	:0					
	► C	OMPLETE	CANCEL			
Main Menu	Simp	le Menu				

- 8. Move the manipulator using the axis key.
- 9. Press [MODIFY] and [ENTER].
 - Taught position is registered.
 Repeat 7 to 9 operation to teach TC1 to TC5.
 "•" indicates that teaching is completed and "O" indicates that it is not completed.

DATA	DIT DISPLAY		2 🗹 🖬 🤫 🔟	📮 (h)
JOB JOB ARC WELDING VARIABLE BOOT IN/OUT IN/OUT IN/OUT SYSTEM INFO	TOOL CALIBRATI TOOL NO.: 00 R1 :S L U R B T	0 POS -264 <st. -1017 TC1 170 TC2 388 TC3 31 TC4 TC5</st. 	ITION TCA ITUS> : ● : ● : ● : ● : ○	
	COMPLETE	CANCEL		
Main Menu	Simple Menu			

- To check the taught positions, call up the required window among TC1 to TC5 and press [FWD]. The manipulator moves to the set position.
- If there is a difference between the current position of the manipulator and the shown position data, "TC□" next to "POSITION" in the window flashes.
- 10. Select "COMPLETE".

8 System Setup

8.3 Tool Data Setting

 Calibration data is registered in the tool file. Once the calibration is completed, the tool coordinate window is displayed on the screen.

DATA	EDIT DISPLAY	UTILITY	12	2 🖌 🐝 🖻	📮 🖰	
JOB BOOT ARC WELDING WARIABLE BOOT	TOOL TOOL NO. : NAME STAN X -6 Y - Z -1 W	0 / 64 DARD_TOOL 18.211 mm 78.445 mm 86.339 mm	Rx Ry Rz	0.0000 deg. 0.0000 deg. 0.0000 deg.		
	Xg T	0.000 mm 0.000 mm 0.000 mm	Ix Iy Iz	0.000 kg.m2 0.000 kg.m2 0.000 kg.m2		
SYSTEM INFO		_				
Main Menu	Simple Menu			PAGE		

8.3.2.4 Clearing Calibration Data

Before the calibration of a new tool, clear the robot information and calibration data.

- 1. Select {DATA} under the pull-down menu.
 - The pull-down menue appears.

DATA	E	DIT	DISPLAY	UTILITY	12	2	M 🐝 🔟	📮 侍	
CLEAR DATA		TOOL (TOOL	CALIBRATIC _ NO.: 00	N	DOGU	TON	101		
ARC WELDIN VARIABLE BOOT IN/OUT IN/OUT IN/OUT IN/OUT SYSTEM INF		U U R B T		165 -471 134 156 37	<stat TC1 TC2 TC3 TC4 TC5</stat 				
		CO	I PLETE	CANCEL					
Main Menu	ı [Simpl	e Menu						

2. Select {CLEAR DATA}.

8 System Setup

8.3 Tool Data Setting

- The confirmation dialog box is shown.

DATA	EDIT	DISPLAY	UTILITY	12 🗷	M 🥴 🔞	🕞 (h
JOB	TOOL	CALIBRATIC	- N			
ARC WELDIN	R1 : G	S -	0 165	POSITION <status></status>	TCI	
*		J R -	-4/1 134	TC2 :	•	_
B001			Clear d	ata?		1
ROBOT		YES	3	NO		
SYSTEM INF	0					
		OMPLETE	CANCEL			
Main Menu	Simp	le Menu				

- 3. Select {YES}.
 - All data is cleared.

DATA	EDIT	DISPLAY	UTILITY	12	2 🖌 😣	I 🖵 🙌
JOB	TOOL C	CALIBRATIO NO.: 00	N			
	R1 :S		* *	POSIT <stat< th=""><th>FION <u>TC1</u> FUS></th><th></th></stat<>	FION <u>TC1</u> FUS>	
	U D		*	TC1	: 0	
VARIABLE	B		*	TC3	:0	
<u>B001</u>	l i		*	TC5	:0	
ROBOT	Ĩ					
<u>~~/</u>	Į					
SYSTEM INFO						
	CON	IPI FTF	CANCEL			
			0111022	_		
Main Menu	Simpl	e Menu				



If tool angle data is required, input the data number in the tool coordinate window. Refer to *chapter 8.3.1.3 "Registering Tool Angle" at page 8-21* for the operating instructions.

- 8 System Setup
- 8.3 Tool Data Setting

8.3.2.5 Checking the TCP

After registering the tool file, check if the TCP is correctly registered by performing a TCP fixed operation like the one shown below, in any coordinate system other than the joint.



- 1. Press [COORD].
 - Select any coordinate system except " JOINT" by pressing [COORD].



2. Select desired tool number.

-Show the tool coordinate window of the desired tool by pressing the

page key or selecting it in the tool list window.

 B
 System Setup

 8.3
 Tool Data Setting

 3.
 Move the R, B, or T axes using the axis key.

 By pressing the axis keys for the R, B, and T axes, change the manipulator pose without changing the TCP position. If this operation shows a large TCP error, adjust the tool data.

 Image: the state of the state o



8.3.3 Automatic Measurement of the Tool Load and the Center of Gravity

8.3.3.1 What is the Automatic Measurement of the Tool Load and the Center of Gravity?

With this function, the user can register the load of tool and the position of the tools center of gravity.

For details on the TCP fixed operation, see "2.8.1 Motion

The tool load and the position of it's center of gravity are measured and registered in a tool file.



This function can be used where the manipulator is installed level on the ground.

For the conditions required for manipulator installation, refer to *chapter 8.4 "ARM Control" at page 8-38*.

8 System Setup

8.3 Tool Data Setting

8.3.3.2 Measurement of the Tool Load and the Center of Gravity

To measure the tool load and the center of gravity, move the manipulator to its home position (horizontal to the U-, B- and R-axes) and operate the U-, B- and T-axes.





To correctly measure the tool load or the center of gravity, remove the cables or wires connected to the tool.

- 1. Select {ROBOT} under the main menu.
- 2. Select {TOOL}.
 - The tool list window appears.
 - The tool list window is called up only when the file extension function is valid.

8 System Setup

8.3 Tool Data Setting

DATA EDIT DISPLAY UTILITY 12 🗹 🖬 😣 🗃 寻 🙌 TOOL COORDINATE JOE NAME DOUT MOVE END STANDARD_TOOL STANDARD_TOOL2 00 01 ARC WELDING 02 03 04 05 06 07 08 09 10 11 12 13 14 VARIABLE B001 IN/OUT **C** ROBOT SYSTEM INFO Main Menu

If the file extension function is invalid, the tool coordinate window appears.



- 3. Select the desired tool number.
 - Move the cursor to the desired number in the tool list window and press [SELECT].
 - The tool coordinate window of the selected number is shown.
 - In the tool coordinate window, the number can be changed by pressing the page key or selecting {PAGE}.

- 8 System Setup
- 8.3 Tool Data Setting
 - To switch the tool list window and the tool coordinate window, press $\{DISPLAY\} \rightarrow \{LIST\}$ or $\{DISPLAY\} \rightarrow \{COORDINATE DATA\}$.



4. Select {UTILITY} under the menu.



- 5. Select {W.GRAV.POS MEASURE}.
 - The window for the automatic measurement of the tool load and the center of gravity is shown.

DATA	EDIT	DISPLAY	UTILITY	12	2 🖌 🛛	8 🔞	📮 🕀	Þ
JOB ARC WELDING WARIABLE BOOT IN/OUT IN/OUT ROBOT SYSTEM INFO	R1:	AV.POS MEAS DL ND.: 00 :W * Xg * Yg * Zg *	URE LOAD SETTI .**** kg .**** mm .**** mm .**** mm	NG ON < S HOW U B T(1 T(2	I U-ARM IN :TATUS > IE : O : O : O : O : O	OT CONS	NOER	
	RE	EGISTER	CANCEL		PAGE			
Main Menu	Simp	le Menu						

- 6. Press the page key
 - In a system with several manipulators, use the page key to change the group to be controlled.

- 8 System Setup
- 8.3 Tool Data Setting
- 7. Press [FWD].
 - Press [FWD] once, and the manipulator moves to the home position (horizontal to the U-, B- and R-axes).
- 8. Press [FWD] again.
 - Press [FWD] again, and measurement starts. Keep the button pressed until measurement is completed.

The manipulator moves in the order listed below. Once measurement is completed, "O"changes to " \bullet ".

- \bigcirc Measurement of the U-axis: U-axis home position +4.5 degrees \rightarrow
- -4.5 degrees
- ② Measurement of the B-axis: B-axis home position +4.5 degrees →
- -4.5 degrees
- ③ First measurement of the T-axis: T-axis home position +4.5 degrees → -4.5 degrees
- ④ Second measurement of the T-axis: T-axis home position +60 degrees → +4.5 degrees → -4.5 degrees
 - The speed during measurement automatically changes to "Medium".
 During the measurement, "HOME" or "U" blinks on the screen.
 During the measurement, the [FWD] button has to be kept pressed. If the button is released during the measurement or if it is released before "O"changes into "•", the measurement is aborted and the following message appears: "Stopped measurement"
 The measurement starts again from the first home position.
 - When all the measurements are completed or when all the "O"marks have changed into "●", the measured data appears on the screen.



- 8 System Setup
- 8.3 Tool Data Setting
- 9. Select "REGISTER".
 - The measured data is registered in the tool file, and the tool coordinate window appears.
 - Select "CANCEL" to call up the tool list window without registering the measured data in the tool file.

- 8 System Setup
- 8.4 ARM Control

8.4 ARM Control

8.4.1 ARM Control

ARM Control, a control system originally developed by Yaskawa, achieves an enhanced robot motion performance such as improved path accuracy or educed cycle time.

The moment of inertia and the gravity moment etc. of each axis are calculated by the ARM control function, and DX100 controls robot motion according to the result. It is necessary to set the Robot setup condition and the tool load information to request these accurately.

The robot setup condition is robot installation angle relative to ground and the weight and a center of gravity position of the load installed at each part of robot, etc.

The tool load information is weight, a center of gravity position, and moment of inertia at the center of gravity, of the tool installed at the flange.

It is necessary to set these information correctly to do a better operation control by the ARM control.

8.4.2 ARM CONTROL Window



8.4.2.1 Robot Setup Condition

Fulfill the following robot setup condition to enable the ARM control.

- Robot installation angle
- · S-head payload
- U-arm payload

- 8 System Setup
- 8.4 ARM Control

Robot installation angle

The angle of the manipulator installed relative to ground is set in ANGLE REL. TO GROUND to calculate the gravity moment which loads to each axis of the manipulator.

The robot installation angle sets how much X axis of the robot coordinates has inclined with the ground around Y axis of the robot coordinates. The direction of + in the U axis operation from the home position posture of the manipulator becomes direction of + of the robot installation angle. Therefore, the robot installation angle for a vertical downward wall mount specification becomes -90 degrees.



<Example>



If the robot installation angle is not correctly set, the manipulator cannot be properly controlled. Therefore, make sure to set the value correctly, paying special attentions to the direction "+" or "-".



Only rotation angle around Y axis of the robot coordinates can be set in the robot installation angle. Contact YASKAWA representative when robots is installed

to incline Y axis of the robot coordinates relative to ground.

S-head payload

Set the weight and the center of gravity position roughly when the equipment such as transformer is installed at the S-head.

It is not necessary to set these values when there is no installed load on the S-head.

WEIGHT (unit: kg)

The weight of the installed load is set.

It is not required to set a correct value, however, it is recommended to set a value slightly larger than the actual load. (Round up the value with each fraction between 0.5 to 1 kg.)

X (From S-Axis), Y (From S-Axis) (unit: mm)

The center of gravity position of the installed load is set by the distance in the direction of X and the direction of Y from S axis center here. It can be set with a rough value.

The direction of X and Y applies to the robot coordinates. The value is set by a negative number when the position is in "-" direction.

Load on the S-head (Top View)



U-arm payload

Set the weight and the center of gravity position roughly when the equipment such as the wire supplying motors is installed on U arm.

A standard value is set when shipping from the factory.

Set the weight in "0" if there is no installing equipment on U arm.

WEIGHT (unit: kg)

The weight of the installing load is set here.

Set a little large value though it does not care by a rough value. (Rase to a unit in each 0.5 to 1kg)

X (From U-Axis), HEIGHT (From U-Axis) (unit: mm)

The center of gravity position of the installing load is set here. It does not care by a rough value.

X (From U-Axis) is horizontal distance from U axis rotation center to the center of gravity position of the load. Set negative number when there is mass side in the back from U-axis rotation center.

HEIGHT (From U-Axis) is height of the vertical direction from U-axis rotation center to the center of gravity position of the load.

8 System Setup

8.4 ARM Control







ARM CONTROL window is displayed only when the security mode is set in the management mode.

1. Select {ROBOT} under the main menu.

DATA	EDIT DISPLAY	UTILITY 🛛 ใ 🗷 🖌	1 👒 🔟 🖳 🙌
JOB			O OVERDUM
	POSITION	7 TOOL	&S-SENSOR
ARC WELDING	COMMAND POSITION	R INTERFERENCE	S LIMIT RELEASE
VARIABLE B001	E SERVO MONITOR	SHOCK SENS	ARM CONTROL
	K WORK HOME POS	Ser coordinate	부스 SHIFT VALUE
ROBOT	E SECOND HOME POS	HOME POSITION	
SYSTEM INFO	T DROP AMOUNT	MANIPULATOR TYPE	
	POWER ON/OFF POS	ANALOG MONITOR	
Main Menu	Simple Menu		

- 8 System Setup
- 8.4 ARM Control
- 2. Select {ARM CONTROL}.
 - The ARM CONTROL window appears.

DATA	EDIT DISPLAY		2 🗹 📶 % 🔟	🕞 🙌 🛛 🕨
JOB ARC WELDING VARIABLE BOOT IN/OUT IN/OUT IN/OUT SOUT SYSTEM INFO	ARM CONTROL CONTROL GRO «ROBOT SETU ANGLE REL. S-HEAD PAYL WEIGHT X(FROM S- Y(FROM S- Y(FROM S- U-ARM PAYLO WEIGHT X(FROM U- HEIGHT (FR	UP: ROBOT1 P CONDITION> OGROUND OAD AXIS) AXIS) AXIS) AXIS) OM U-AXIS)	0 deg. 0.000 kg 0 mm 0 mm 50.000 kg 150 mm 270 mm	
			PAGE	
Main Menu	Simple Menu			

- 3. Press the page key **Press**, or select {PAGE}.
 - Select the desired control group when there are two or more group axes.

DATA E	DIT 🛛 DISPLAY 🖉 UTILITY 🕅 🔀 🖬 🕼 🕒 🥀 💽
JOB ARC WELDING VARIABLE BOOT IN/OUT IN/OUT IN/OUT ROBOT SYSTEM INFO	ARM CONTROL CONTROL GROUP: ROBOTI (ROBOT SETUP CONDITION) ANGLE REL. TO GROUND S-HEAD PAYLOAD WEIGHT 0.000 kg X(FROM S-AXIS) 0 mm U-ARM PAYLOAD WEIGHT 50.000 kg X(FROM U-AXIS) 150 mm HEIGHT(FROM U-AXIS) 270 mm RIEROBOTI
	PAGE
Main Menu	Simple Menu

- 4. Select the desired item.
- 5. Input the value and press [ENTER].

8.4 ARM Control

8.4.3 Tool Load Information Setting



8.4.3.1 Tool Load Information

Tool load information includes weight, a center of gravity position, and moment of inertia at the center of gravity of the tool installed at the flange. These are registered in the tool file.



8.4.3.2 How to Calculate Tool Load Information

Weight: W (Unit: kg)

The total weight of the installing tool is set.

It is not required to set a correct value, however, it is recommended to set a value slightly larger than the actual load. (Round up the value with each fraction between 0.5 to 1 kg for small and medium size manipulator, and 1 to 5 kgs for large manipulator.)
- 8 System Setup
- 8.4 ARM Control

Center of gravity position: xg, yg, zg (Unit: mm)

The center of gravity position of the installed tool is set as the position in the flange coordinates.

Since it is usually difficult to get a strict center of gravity position, it can be set with a rough value. Presume and set a center of gravity position roughly from outline of the tool.

Set the value when the center of gravity position of the installed tool is clear from specifications, etc.

Moment of inertia at the center of gravity: lx, ly, lz (Unit: kg·m²) It is an moment of inertia of the tool at the center of gravity position.

The value is calculated around the each axis of the coordinates which is in parallel to the flange coordinates and which home position is the center of gravity position of the tool.

It is not required to set a correct value, however, it is recommended to set a value slightly larger than the actual value.

This setting is used to calculate the moment of inertia which loads to each axis of the manipulator. However, the moment of inertia at the center of gravity does not need to be set when this data is small enough for the moment of inertia calculated from weight and the center of gravity position.

However, the setting is required when the moment of inertia of the tool is large (as a rough guide, the tool is considered to be large when the tool size is about more than 2-times the distance between the flange and the center of gravity).



The size of the tool is not too big. Setting the moment of inertia at center of gravity is not necessary.

The size of the tool is big. ´ Setting the moment of inertia at center of gravity is <u>necessary</u>.

Rough value of the moment of inertia at the center of gravity can be calculated by the following methods.

- Method to approximate the entire tool in hexahedron or cylinder.
- Method to calculate from each weight and center of gravity position of plural mass.

Refer to the following setting examples for details.

8 System Setup

8.4 ARM Control

<Example 1>

In the example of sealing gun of the figure below, the center of gravity is set on the flange coordinates assuming that the center of gravity is positioned slightly inclined to the head from the center.

There is no need to set the moment of inertia at the center of gravity since the size of the gun is not too large.



 The own moment of inertia calculation for hexahedron and cylinder

The own moment of inertia of hexahedron and cylinder can be calculated by the next expression when the center of gravity is at the center.

Refer to the expression when the calculation of the moment of inertia at the center of gravity.



8 System Setup 8.4 ARM Control

<Example 2>

It is necessary to set the moment of inertia at the center of gravity when the entire size of the tool and workpiece is large compared to the distance from the flange to the center of gravity position.

Calculate the moment of inertia at the center of gravity roughly from the expression (refer to the forementioned supplement: "The own moment of inertia calculation for hexahedron and cylinder"), by approximating the entire tool in the shape of the hexahedron or the cylinder.

If the weight of held workpiece is greatly different in the handling usage etc., it is more effective to set tool load information on each workpiece and to switch the tool on each step according to the held workpiece. Set the tool load information in the state to hold the heaviest workpiece when using the tools without switching them.



= approx. 100[kg]

Center of gravity: Position at flange right under 250mm almost

Moment of inertia at the center of gravity:

The hexahedron of 0.500 x 0.400 x 1.000[m] which encloses the

entire tool + workpiece is assumed.

By the expression to calculate the own moment of inertia of hexahedron,

$$Ix = (Ly^{2} + Lz^{2} / 12) * W$$

= ((0.400² + 1.000²) / 12) * 100 = 9.667 = approx. 10.000
Iy = (Lx² + Lz² / 12) * W = ((0.500² + 0.400²) / 12) * 100 = 3.417 = approx. 3.500
Iz = (Lx² + Ly² / 12) * W = ((0.500² + 1.000²) / 12) * 100 = 10.417 = 0.41

$$Iz = (Lx^2 + Ly^2 / 12) * W = ((0.500^2 + 1.000^2) / 12) * 100 = 10.417 = approx. 10.500$$

SUPPLE

8 System Setup

8.4 ARM Control

<Setting>

• W	:	100.000 kg
• Xg	:	0.000 mm
• Yg	:	0.000 mm
• Zg	:	250.000 mm
• Ix	:	10.000 kg.m ²
• ly	:	3.500 kg.m ²
• Iz	:	10.500 kg.m ²

How to calculate "Center of gravity position" and "moment of inertia at center of gravity" for plural mass

The center of gravity position and the moment of inertia at the center of gravity of the entire tool can be calculated by the weight and the center of gravity position of each mass when the tool can be thought that the tool consists of two or more big mass like the twin gun system etc.

1. Divide the tool into some parts as the weight and the center of gravity position can be roughly presumed. It is not necessary to divide in detail. The tool is approximated in construction of rough parts.

2. Calculate the weight and the center of gravity position of the each parts on flange coordinates. It does not care by a rough value. Calculate the own moments of inertia of the big parts. (If parts are small, it is not necessary to calculate the own moments of inertia. Refer to above-mentioned supplement: "The own moment of inertia calculation for hexahedron and cylinder" for how to calculate the own moment of inertia.)

- wi : Weight of the i-th parts [kg]
- (xi, yi, zi) : Center of gravity position of the i- th parts (On flange coordinates)[mm]

Icxi, Icyi, Iczi : Own moments of inertia of the i-th parts [kg*m²]

3. The center of gravity position of the entire tool is calculated by the next expression.

 $xg = \{w1 * x1 + w2 * x2 + + wi * xi\} / (w1 + w2 + + wi)$ $yg = \{w1 * y1 + w2 * y2 + + wi * yi\} / (w1 + w2 + + wi)$ $zg = \{w1 * z1 + w2 * z2 + + wi * zi\} / (w1 + w2 + + wi)$

4. The moment of inertia at the center of gravity position of the entire tool is calculated by the next expression.

8 System Setup

8.4 ARM Control

<Example 3>

When there are two or more big mass such as the twin gun system as shown in the figure below, perform:

- Set the center of gravity position when the center of gravity position of the entire tool is roughly understood, and set the moment of inertia at the center of gravity calculated by approximating the entire tool in the shape of hexahedron or cylinder. (It is enough in this setting usually.); or
- 2. When weight in each mass and the center of gravity position are understood, the center of gravity position and the moment of inertia at the center of gravity of the entire tool can be calculated. (Refer to forementioned supplement column: "How to calculate "Center of gravity position" and "moment of inertia at the center of gravity" for plural mass".)

This example shows the calculation with the mothod 2.



8 System Setup

8.4 ARM Control

 $Iz = 3 * ((100 - 100)^{2} + (50 - (-83))^{2}) * 10^{-6}$ + 6 * ((100 - 100)^{2} + ((-150) - (-83))^{2}) * 10^{-6} = 0.080 = approx. 0.100

* The own moment of inertia (Icxi, Icyi, Iczi) of the gun is disregarded in this example, since each gun is smaller than the entire tool.

<Setting>

• W	: 10.000 kg
• Xg	: 100.000 mm
• Yg	: -83.333 mm
• Zg	: 60.000 mm
• Ix	: 0.100 kg.m ²
• ly	: 0.010 kg.m ²
• Iz	: 0.100 kg.m ²

8.4.3.3 Tool Load Information Registering

Tool load information is registered in the tool file.

- 1. Select {ROBOT} under the main menu.
- 2. Select {TOOL}.
 - The tool coordinate window appears.
 - The tool coordinate window appears only when the file extension function is valid.
 - When the file extension function is invalid, the tool list window appears.

データ	編集	表示	2-71971	12 🗷 📶 👒 🔟	📮 🗄
ジョブ デーション 変数 B001 入出力 IIIのOut	番目の1000000000000000000000000000000000000	ル 座標 号 0 SI 1 2 3 4 4 6 6 7 7 8 9 0 0 1 1 2 2 3 3 4	名称 FANDARD TOOL		
メインメニュ	- 簡単	XII-			

- DX100
- 8 System Setup

8.4 ARM Control

データ	編集 表示	2-71971	12 🗳 🖌	1 畅 🔟 🖵 ()
ジョブ	ツール ツール番号:	0 / 64			
7~5溶接	名称 ST × Y	NDARD_TOOL 0.000 mm 0.000 mm	Rx 0.00 Ry 0.00	00 deg. 00 deg.	
変数 B001	z L w C	0.000 mm 0.000 kg	Rz <u> 0.00</u>	<u>)0</u> deg.	
入出力 In Cout	Xg T Yg T 7a	0.000 mm 0.000 mm	Ix 0.0	00 kg.m2 00 kg.m2	
□≭ット ∽	28	0.000 mm	12 0.0	<u>JO</u> K8.112	
ジステム'情報 ▲ ●					
			^	(<i>3</i> 7	
メインメニュー	簡単メニュー				

- 3. Select the desired tool number.
 - (1) Move the cursor to the number of the desired tool, and press [SELECT] in the tool list window.
 - (2) The tool coordinate window of the selected number appears.
 - (3) Select the desired number in the tool coordinate window by pressing the page key or clicking on the {PAGE} button.
 - (4) To switch the tool list window and the tool coordinate window, press {DISPLAY} → {LIST} or {DISPLAY} → {COORDINATE DATA}.
- 4. Select the desired item to register and input the value.
 - The window can be scrolled with the cursor.
 - The menu enters the state of a numeric input if the cursor is on the desired item to register and the [SELECT] is pressed.

データ 着	嘉集 表:	⊼] 2-74974	12	2 🖌 🧐	🕞 🙌	Þ
ジョブ DOUT MOVE BAD	ツール ツール番号 夕称	5: 0 / 64				
アーク/溶接		0.000 mm 0.000 mm 0.000 mm	R× Ry Rz	0.0000 deg. 0.0000 deg. 0.0000 deg.		
B001	w [0.000 kg				
入出力 in Out ロボット	Xg [Yg [Zg [0.000 mm 0.000 mm 0.000 mm	Ix Iy Iz	0.000 kg.m2 0.000 kg.m2 0.000 kg.m2		
→ ジステム情報 ○ ○						
				ページ		
メインメニュー	簡単メニュー					

- 5. Press [ENTER].
 - The input value is registered.
 - The servo power is automatically turned OFF when editing the value while the servo power is ON, followed by a message "Servo off by changing data" displayed for three seconds.

8.4 ARM Control

When the data setting is not done

It is considered that data is not set correctly in tool load information in the following cases.

• When the weight (W) is "0".

• When the center of gravity position (Xg, Yg, Zg) are all "0".

In these cases, the manipulator is controlled by using the standard parameter values (vary according to each robot model) which were set by default.

Standard Value:

Weight: W = Payload

Center of gravity position:

(Xg, Yg, Zg) = (0, 0, Allowed value of B-axis for payload)

NOTE

In this case, when an actual tool load is not large enough, the manipulator cannot sufficiently exert its function, (speed and acceleration / deceleration). Especially, when operating the manipulator with the standard value, a difference of 100 kg or more in the load between the actual tool load and the standard value may cause vibrations in the manipulator motion: it is therefore essential to correctly set the tool load information for the proper operation of the manipulator.

Moreover, when the tool which an actual tool center of gravity position greatly offsets in X-direction or Y-direction is installed the generated moment by the tool cannot be compensated.

Switch of the tool file

In case that two or more tool files are used, information on an effective tool file is referred for tool load information used by the ARM control at that time in according to switch tool file.

Set the same value of tool load information in each tool file when the tool file is switched to change only TCP (when neither the weight nor the center of gravity position of the entire tool installed in the flange is changed).

Moreover, set tool load information to the corresponding tool file respectively when total weight and the center of gravity position etc. of the tool is changed (when the system which exchange the tool by automatic tool changer).

8 System Setup

8.5 Work Home Position

8.5 Work Home Position

8.5.1 What is the Work Home Position?

The Work Home Position is a reference point for manipulator operations. It prevents interference with peripheral device by ensuring that the manipulator is always within a set range as a precondition for operations such as starting the line. The manipulator can be moved to the set work home position by operation from the programming pendant, or by signal input from an external device. When the manipulator is in the vicinity of the work home position, the work home position signal turns ON.

8.5.2 Setting Work Home Position

8.5.2.1 Work Home Position Window

1. Select {ROBOT} under the main menu.

DATA	EDIT DISP	LAY UTILITY	12 🗹 🖌	1 🐝 🔟	🖵 🙌
	SECURITY	IN 📔 U	SER COORDINATE		
ARC WELDING	COMMAND POSITIO	IN SOLO	VERRUN &S-SENSOR		
VARIABLE	WORK HOM	IE POS 😈 L	IMIT RELEASE		
	J2 SECOND H	HOME POS 🎠 S	HIFT VALUE		
	POWER ON POS	I/OFF			
SYSTEM INFO	* TOOL				
	SHOCK SE	INS			
Main Menu	Simple Menu				

- 2. Select {WORK HOME POS}.
 - The WORK HOME POSITION window is appears.

DATA	EDIT DISPL	AY UTILITY	12 🗹 🖬 😣 🔯	🖳 🙌 🖻
JOB ARC WELDING VARIABLE BOOT IN/OUT IN/OUT IN/OUT ROBOT SYSTEM INFO	WORK HOME PO R1 :S U R B T	DSTTION ORIGIN -145000 -45000 -6000 0 -18000 0	CURRENT 0 0 0 0 0 0	
			PAGE	
Main Menu	Simple Menu) move t	to and modify operation	origin position

8 System Setup

8.5 Work Home Position

- 3. Press the page key
 - When two or more manipulators exist in the system, use the page key it change the control group, or click on {PAGE} to select the desired control group.



- 8 System Setup
- 8.5 Work Home Position
- 8.5.2.2 Registering/Changing the Work Home Position
 - 1. Press the axis keys in the work home position display.
 - Move the manipulator to the new work home position.
 - 2. Press [MODIFY], [ENTER].
 - New work home position is set.

When the work home position is changed, the cubic interference area is automatically set as cube 64 to 57 in the base coordinate system.

- The cube 64 is for ROBOT1
- The cube 63 is for ROBOT2
- The cube 62 is for ROBOT3
- The cube 61 is for ROBOT4
- The cube 60 is for ROBOT5
- The cube 59 is for ROBOT6
- The cube 58 is for ROBOT7
- The cube 57 is for ROBOT8



The work home position cube is a cube like the one shown in the figure below; the length of its sides is determined by a parameter setting made by the user (units: μ m).

By changing this parameter setting, the size of the cube can be changed.

Fig. 8-2: <u>S3C805</u>: The work home position cube length of its sides (μ m)



Specify whether "COMMAND POSITION" or "FEEDBACK POSITION" is to be set to the work home position cube signal's CHECK MEASURE in the interference area settings. "COMMAND POSITION" is the default setting.

- 8 System Setup
- 8.5 Work Home Position
- 8.5.2.3 Returning to the Work Home Position

In the teach mode

1. Press [FWD] in the work home position display.

 The manipulator moves to the new work home position. The moving speed is the selected manual speed.

In the play mode

When the work home position return signal is input (detected at leading edge), the TCP of the manipulator is moved to the work home position. When the manipulator moves, a message "Manipulator is moving to work home position" is displayed. In this case, the move interpolation is MOVJ, and the speed applied is the one set in the parameters. (S1CxG56; units: 0.01 %.)

8.5.2.4 Output of the Work Home Position Signal

This signal is output any time the current position of the TCP of the manipulator is checked and found to be within the work home position cube.

- 8 System Setup
- 8.6 Interference Area

8.6 Interference Area

8.6.1 Interference Area

The interference area is a function that prevents interference between multiple manipulators or the manipulator and peripheral device. The area can be set up to 32 area. There are two types of interference areas, as follows:

- Cubic Interference Area
- Axis Interference Area

The DX100 judges whether the TCP of the manipulator is inside or outside this area, and outputs this status as a signal.

8.6.2 Cubic Interference Area

8.6.2.1 Cubic Interference Area

This area is a rectangular parallelepiped which is parallel to the base coordinate, robot coordinate, or user coordinate. The DX100 judges whether the current position of the manipulator's TCP is inside or outside this area, and outputs this status as a signal.



8.6.2.2 Cube Setting Method

There are three ways to set cubic a interference area as described in the following sections:

1. Enter the maximum and minimum values for the cube coordinates.

- 8 System Setup
- 8.6 Interference Area



2. Move the manipulator at the maximum and minimum value positions of the cube corner using the axis keys.



3. After entering the lengths of the three faces of the cube (axial length) using the Numeric keys, move the manipulator to the center point of the cube using the axis keys.



8 System Setup

8.6 Interference Area

8.6.2.3 Setting Operation

1. Select {ROBOT} under the main menu.

DATA	DIT DISPLAY	UTILITY 18 🗷 🖌	1 👒 🔟 🖵 👆	
JOB DOUT MOVE		* TOOL	OVERRUN &S-SENSOR	
ARC WELDING	COMMAND POSITION		UIMIT RELEASE	
VARIABLE B001	ERVO MONITOR	SHOCK SENS	ARM CONTROL	
	WORK HOME POS	Ser coordinate	샤스 SHIFT VALUE	
ковот	E SECOND HOME POS	HOME POSITION		
SYSTEM INFO	T DROP AMOUNT	MANIPULATOR TYPE		
	POWER ON/OFF POS	ANALOG MONITOR		
Main Menu	Simple Menu			

- 2. Select {INTERFERENCE}.
 - The INTERFERENCE AREA window is shown.

DATA	EDIT DISPLAY		12 🖻 🖬 🔞 🔟	📮 🙌 🛛 🖻
ARC WELDING WARIABLE BOOT IN/OUT IN/OUT IN/OUT BOBOT SYSTEM INFO	INTERFERENCE INTERFERENCE METHOD CONTROL GROU CHECK MEASUF TEACHING MET COMMENT	AREA SIGNAL: 1 / 6 MIP NOTE E COMMAND HOD MAX / M	4 TERFERENCE POSITION IN	
			PAGE	
Main Menu	Simple Menu			

- 3. Select the desired cube number.
 - Select the desired cube number with the page key or by number input.

- 8 System Setup
- 8.6 Interference Area
 - When selecting the cube number by number input, select {PAGE} to input the desired signal number.

DATA	EDIT	DISPLAY	UTILITY	12 🖻 📶 👒 ն	I 🖵 🙌	Þ
JOB ARC WELDIN VARIABLE BOOT IN/OUT IN/OUT ROBOT SYSTEM INF	INTE INT MET IAG CHE TEA COM	REFERENCE AR REFERENCE S HOD TROL GROUP DK MEASURE CHING METHO MENT	EA IGNAL: 1 / AXIS I XXIS I COMMAN D MAX / Interf	64 NTERFERENCE D POSITION MIN MIN		
				PAGE		
Main Menu	Simp	le Menu				

- 4. Select "METHOD".
 - "AXIS INTERFERENCE" and "CUBIC INTERFERENCE" are displayed alternately every time [SELECT] is pressed. If "CUBIC INTERFERENCE" is selected, the window is changed.

DATA	EDIT	DISPLAY	UTILITY	12 🖻 📶 🔞 🕅	3 🕞 († 🛛 🖸
JOB JOB ARC WELDING WARIABLE BOOT IN/OUT IN/OUT IN/OUT COL SYSTEM INFO	INTER METT CON CHEC REF TEAC	FERENCE AR REFERENCE S 100 TROL GROUP XK MEASURE COORDINATE COORDINATE COORDINATE COORDINATE COORDINATE COORDINATE	EA IGNAL: 1 / DUBIC X*** COMMAN BASE D MAX /	64 INTERFERENCE D POSITION	
				PAGE	
Main Menu	Simp	le Menu			

- 5. Select "CONTROL GROUP".
 - A selection dialog box appears. Select the desired control group.

DATA	E	DIT	DISPLAY	UTILITY	12 🖻 🖬 👒 🔟 寻	h 🕨
JOB JOB ARC WELDI VARIABLE BOOT IN/OUT IN/OUT SYSTEM IN SYSTEM IN SY		INTER INTE METH CONT CHEC REF TEAC COMM	FERENCE AR RFERENCE S OD ROL GROUP K MEASURE COORD INATE HING METHOL ENT	IGNAL: 1 / (IGNAL: 1 / (RUBIC R2:R0E BASE D MAX / 1	64 INTERFERENCE 3011 ITTON]
					PAGE	
Main Menu	J	Simpl	e Menu			

6. Select "REF COORDINATES".

8 System Setup

8.6 Interference Area

- (1) A selection box appears.
- (2) Select the desired coordinate.
- (3) If the user coordinates are selected, the number input line is displayed. Input the user coordinate number and press [ENTER].

DATA E	EDIT DISPLAY	итацату 12	2 🖌 🗞 🖻	🕞 († 🕑
JOB ARC WELDING VARIABLE BOOT IN/OUT IN/OUT IN/OUT SVSTEM INFO	INTERFERENCE ARE INTERFERENCE SI METHOD CONTROL GROUP CHECK MEASURE REF COORDINATE TEACHING METHOD COMMENT X 0.00 Y 0.00 Z 0.00	A GNAL: 1 / 64 CUBIC INTER RT COMMAND POS BASE DUSER (MIN) (0) 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0	FERENCE	
			PAGE	
Main Menu	Simple Menu			

- 7. Select "CHECK MEASURE."
 - Each time [SELECT] is pressed, "COMMAND POSITION" and "FEEDBACK POSITION" are displayed alternately.

DATA	EDIT DISPLAY		2 🖌 😵 🔟	📮 🙌 🛛 🖻
JOB ARC WELDING VARIABLE BOOT IN/OUT IN/OUT IN/OUT SYSTEM INFO SYSTEM INFO	INTERFERENCE INTERFERENCE METHOD CONTROL GROL CHECK MEASUR REF COORDINA TEACHING MET COMMENT KMAX X 0 Y 0 Z 0	AREA CUBIC INTER SIGNAL: 1 / 64 CUBIC INTER E HEEDBACK PR RE HEEDBACK HOD MAX / MIN S <min> 1.000 0.000 1.000 0.000 0.000 0.000</min>		
			PAGE	
Main Menu	Simple Menu			



8 System Setup

8.6 Interference Area

Number Input of the Cube Coordinates

- 1. Select "METHOD".
 - (1) Each time [SELECT] is pressed, "MAX/MIN" and "CENTER POS" switch alternately.
 - (2) Select "MAX/MIN".



- 2. Input number for "MAX" and "MIN" data and press [ENTER].
 - The cubic interference area is set.

DATA	EDIT	DISPLAY	UTILITY	12	2 🖌 😵 🗖	🕞 侍	Þ
ARC WELDIN ARC WELDIN VARIABLE BOOT IN/OUT IN/OUT ROBOT SYSTEM INF	INTER INTE MET OCHEC REF TEAC COMM X Y Z	FERENCE AR REFERENCE S 100 IROL GROUP X MEASURE COORDINATE C	EA IGNAL: 1 / 7 CUBIC R1 COMMANI BASE D MAX / 1 COMMANI 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 0	64 INTER 0 POS MIN ↓> 0.000 0.000	FERENCE		
					PAGE		
Main Menu	Simp	le Menu					

Teaching Corner

- 1. Select "METHOD".
 - (1) Each time [SELECT] is pressed, "MAX/MIN" and "CENTER POS" switch alternately.
 - (2) Select "MAX/MIN".
- 2. Press [MODIFY].

8 System Setup

8.6 Interference Area

- DATA EDIT DISPLAY UTILITY 12 🗳 🖬 🚳 🔟 🗦 👆 INTERFERENCE AREA INTERFERENCE SIGNAL: 1 / 64 DOUT MOVE METHOD CUBIC INTERFERENCE CONTROL GROUP CHECK MEASURE REF COORDINATE ARC WELDING COMMAND POSITION VARIABLE TEACHING METHOD MAX / MIN B001 COMMENT <MIN> <MAX IN/OUT 0.000 **C** 0.000 7 ROBOT SYSTEM INFO PAGE Г i) Teach max./min. position Main Me
- A message "Teach max./min. position" appears.

- 3. Move the cursor to "<MAX>" or "<MIN>."
 - Move the cursor to "<MAX>" when changing the maximum value, and move cursor to "<MIN>" when changing the minimum value. The cursor only moves to either "<MIN>" or "<MAX>" at this time.
- 4. Move the manipulator using the axis keys.
 - Move the manipulator to the maximum or minimum position of the cube using the axis keys.
- 5. Press [ENTER].
 - The cubic interference area is registered.

DATA E	EDIT DISPLAY	ОТІЦІТУ 12	2 🖌 🐼 🔟	🕞 (†
JOB ARC WELDING VARIABLE BOOT IN/OUT IN/OUT IN/OUT SYSTEM INFO SYSTEM INFO	INTERFERENCE . INTERFERENCE METHOD CONTROL GROU CHECK MEASUR REF COORDINA TEACHING MET COMMENT COMMENT X 1764 Y 4 Z 1400	AREA SIGNAL: 1 / 64 P RT E COMMAND POS TE BASE HOD MAX / MIN > <min> .993 .896 .000 0.000</min>		
			PAGE	
Main Menu	Simple Menu			

Number Input of the Side of Cube and Teaching Center 1. Select "METHOD".

(1) Each time [SELECT] is pressed, "MAX/MIN" and "CENTER POS" switch alternately.

DX100

- 8 System Setup
- 8.6 Interference Area
 - (2) Select "CENTER POS".

DATA	EDIT	DISPLAY	ОТТЬТТУ 12	2 🖌 😵 🖻	🕞 (†) 🕑
JOB JOB ARC WELDING WARIABLE BOOT IN/OUT IN/OUT ROBOT SYSTEM INFO SYSTEM INFO	INTER INTE CONT CHEC REF TEAC COMM X Y Z	FERENCE AF RFERENCE S IOD RCL GROUP X MEASURE COORD INATE COORD IN COORD IN	EA OUBIC INTER SIGNAL: 1 CUBIC INTER RI COMMAND POS BASE DD CENTER POS C000 0.000 000 0.000 000 0.000	STITION SITION CLENGTH> 0.000 0.0000 0.0000 0.0000	
				PAGE	
Main Menu	Simp	le Menu			

- 2. Input data for length of the cube, then press [ENTER].
 - The length is set.

DATA E	DISPLAY		2 🖌 😵 🔟	🕞 († 🕑
ARC WELDING ARC WELDING VARIABLE BOOT IN/DUT IN/DUT IN/DUT SYSTEM INFO	INTERFERENCE / INTERFERENCE METHOD CONTROL GROUK CHECK MEASUR REF COORDINA TEACHING METH COMMENT //	AREA SIGNAL: 1 / 64 CUBIC INTEF E COMMAND POS TE BASE HOD CENTER POS (MIN) (000) -25.000 (000) 0.000	#ERENCE SITION	
			PAGE	
Main Menu	Simple Menu			

- 3. Press [MODIFY].
 - A message "Move to center point and teach" appears. The cursor only moves to either "<MIN>" or "<MAX>" at this time.

DATA	EDIT 🛛 DISPLAY 🗍 UTILITY 🗍 🏠 🗹 🕼 🕼 🕞 🔭 🕒
JOB ARC WELDING VARIABLE BOOT IN/OUT IN/OUT IN/OUT IN/OUT SYSTEM INFO	INTERFERENCE AREA INTERFERENCE SIGNAL: 1 / 64 METHOD CUBIC INTERFERENCE CONTROL GROUP RI CHECK MEASURE COMMAND POSITION REF COORDINATE BASE TEACHING METHOD CENTER POS COMMENT CENTER POS COMMENT CONTROL X 0.000 0.000 Y 25.000 -25.000 Z 0.000 0.000
	PAGE
Main Menu	Simple Menu 🚺 Move to center point and teach

8 System Setup

8.6 Interference Area

- 4. Move the manipulator using the axis keys.
 - Move the manipulator to the center point of the cube using the axis keys.
- 5. Press [ENTER].
 - The current position is registered as the center point of the cube.

DATA E	DISPLAY		2 🖌 😢 🔟	🕞 († 🕑
JOB ARC WELDING VARIABLE BOOT IN/OUT IN/OUT IN/OUT NOUT SYSTEM INFO	INTERFERENCE / INTERFERENCE METHOD CONTROL GROUP CHECK MEASURE REF COORDINAT TEACHING MENT COMMENT COMMENT X 1785 Y 25 Z 1400	AREA SIGNAL: 1 / 64 OUBIC INTER RI E COMMAND POS TE BASE 100 CENTER POS (MIND) (000) 1765.000 (000) -25.000 (000) 1400.000	FERENCE SITION (LENGTH) (LENGTH) (LENGTH) (0.000 0.000 0.000	
			PAGE	
Main Menu	Simple Menu			

8.6.3 Axis Interference Area

8.6.3.1 Axis Interference Area

The axis interference area is a function that judges the current position of the each axis and outputs a signal. Once the maximum and minimum values have been set at the plus and minus sides of the axis to define the working range, a signal indicating whether the current position of the axis is inside or outside this range is output. (ON: inside, OFF: outside)

Fig. 8-3: Axis Interference Signal for Station Axis



- DX100

8 System Setup

8.6 Interference Area

- 8.6.3.2 Setting Operation
- 1. Select {ROBOT} under the main menu.
- 2. Select {INTERFERENCE}.
 - The INTERFERENCE AREA window appears.

DATA	DISPLAY		2 🖌 % 🔟	🕞 🕆 🕨
ARC WELDING VARIABLE BOOT IN/OUT (IN/OUT (IN/OUT SYSTEM INFO SYSTEM INFO	INTERFERENCE A INTERFERENCE METHOD CONTROL GROUP CHECK MEASURE TEACHING METH COMMENT	REA SIGNAL: 1 / 64 <u>AXIS INTERF</u> HAXK INTERF HAXK / HOD MAX / MIN		
			PAGE	
Main Menu	Simple Menu			

- 3. Select the desired interference signal number.
 - Select the desired interference signal number using the page key or by number input.
 - When selecting the desired interference signal number by number input, select {PAGE} to input the desired signal number.

DATA	EDIT	DISPLAY	UTILITY	12 🗹 🖬 😢 🖾 📮 🙌	
JOB ARC WELDING VARIABLE BOOT IN/OUT MCOdu ROBOT SYSTEM INFO		FERENCE AF REFERENCE S 100 TROL GROUP XK MEASURE HING METHO (ENT	KEA SIGNAL: 1 / / NXIS I COMMAN DD MAX / 1 MAX / 1	64 NTERFERENCE D POSITION MIN	
				PAGE	
Main Menu	Simp	le Menu			

- 8 System Setup
- 8.6 Interference Area
- 4. Select "METHOD".
 - "AXIS INTERFERENCE" and "CUBIC INTERFERENCE" are displayed alternately every time [SELECT] is pressed. Select "AXIS INTERFERENCE".

DATA	DISPLAY	UTILITY	12 🖻 🖌 😢 🔟	🕞 († 🕑
JOB ARC WELDING VARIABLE BOOT IN/OUT IN/OUT ROBOT SYSTEM INFO SYSTEM INFO	INTERFERENCE / INTERFERENCE METHOD CONTROL GROUP CHECK MEASUR TEACHING METH COMMENT	AREA SIGNAL: 1 / A AXIS IN Priver COMMAND COMMAND HOD MAX / N	34 ITERFERENCE DOSITION IN	
			PAGE	
Main Menu	Simple Menu			

- 5. Select "CONTROL GROUP".
 - A selection box appears. Select the desired control group.

DATA	EDIT DISPLAY		2 🖌 🗞 🔟	🕞 († 🕒
JOB ARC VELDING VARIABLE BOOT IN/OUT IN/OUT IN/OUT SYSTEM INFO SYSTEM INFO	INTERFERENCE A INTERFERENCE METHOD CONTROL GROUP CHECK MEASURE TEACHING METH COMMENT	REA SIGNAL: 1 / 64 AXIS INTERF R1:ROBOT1 R2:ROBOT2 DD MAX / MIN		
			PAGE	
Main Menu	Simple Menu			

- 6. Select "CHECK MEASURE".
 - Each time [SELECT] is pressed, "COMMAND POSITION" and "FEEDBACK POSITION" switch alternately.

DATA	EDIT	DISPLAY	UTILITY	17 🖻 📶 👒 🔟 📑 👆	Þ
JOB ARC VELDIN VARIABLE BOOT IN/OUT IN/OUT BOBOT SYSTEM INI SYSTEM INI	INTE/ INT METI CHEL CHEL COM S L U R B T	RFERENCE AR ERFERENCE S HOD GROUP CK MEASURE CHING METHIC WENT (MAX>	EA IGNAL: 1 / 1 RI COMMANI COMMANI 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0	64 NTERFERENCE D POSITION MIN N> 0 0 0 0 0 0 0	
				PAGE	
Main Menu	Simp	le Menu			

- 8 System Setup
- 8.6 Interference Area

■ Number Input of the Axis Data Coordinates

- 1. Select "METHOD".
 - (1) Each time [SELECT] is pressed, "MAX/MIN" and "CENTER POS" switch alternately.

DATA	EDIT	DISPLAY	UTILITY	12	2 🖌 😵 🔟	🕞 🕀	Þ
JOB ARC VELDIN VARIABLE BOOT IN/OUT IN/OUT ROBOT SYSTEM INFI	INTE INT MET CON CHE TEA COM S L U R B T	RFERENCE AF ERFERENCE S HOD TROL GROUP CK MEASURE CHING METHO MENT 	REA SIGNAL: 1 / 1 RT COMMAN COMMAN MAX / (MI) 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0	64 NTERF 0 POS MIN 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0			
					PAGE		
Main Menu	Simp	ole Menu					

- (2) Select "MAX/MIN".
- 2. Input number for "MAX" and "MIN" data and press [ENTER].
 - The axis interference area is set.

DATA	EDIT DISPLAY	UTILITY	12 🗷 📶 👒 🔟	🕞 († 🕒
JOB ARC WELDING VARIABLE BOOT IN/OUT IN/OUT IN/OUT SYSTEM INFO	INTERFERENCE S METHOD CONTROL GROUP CHECK MEASURE TEACHING METHO COMMENT COMMENT S L U U L B T	REA AXIS INI RT AXIS INI RT COMMAND MAX MIN DD MAX MIN S00 S00 S00 S00 0 S00 S00	IERFERENCE POSITION IN 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0	
			PAGE	
Main Menu	Simple Menu			

- 8 System Setup
- 8.6 Interference Area

Teaching Corner

- 1. Select "METHOD".
 - (1) Each time [SELECT] is pressed, "MAX/MIN" and "CENTER POS" switch alternately.
 - (2) Select "MAX/MIN".

DATA	EDIT DISPL	AY UTILITY	12 🗳 🖬 👒 🔟	🖳 🙌 🖻
	INTERFERENC INTERFEREN METHOD CONTROL GR O'HECK MEAS TEACHING M COMMENT K S L COMMENT K B COMMENT COMMENT T	E AREA CE SIGNAL: 1 / AXIS I OUP RT URE COMMAN ETHOD MAX / AX> <mi 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0</mi 	64 NTERFERENCE D POSITION MIN 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0	
			PAGE	
Main Menu	Simple Menu			

- 2. Press [MODIFY].
 - A message "Teach max./min. position" appears.

DATA	EDIT DISPLAY	υτιιτγ 12	2 🖌 🗞 🖻	🕞 (†) 🕑
JOB ARC WELDING VARIABLE BOOT IN/OUT IN/OUT IN/OUT SYSTEM INFO SYSTEM INFO	INTERFERENCE ARE INTERFERENCE S METHOD CONTROL GROUP CHECK MEASURE TEACHING METHOD COMMENT S L L U U R B T	EA IGNAL: 1 / 64 AXIS INTERF RT COMMAND POS D MAX / MIN MAX / MIN 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0		
			PAGE	
Main Menu	Simple Menu	Teach max./min	. position	

- 3. Move the cursor to "<MAX>" or "<MIN>."
 - Move the cursor to "<MAX>" when changing the maximum value, and move cursor to "<MIN>" when changing the minimum value. The cursor only moves to either "<MIN>" or "<MAX>" at this time.
- 4. Move the manipulator using the axis keys.
 - Move the manipulator to the maximum or minimum position of the cube using the axis keys.

- 8
- System Setup Interference Area 8.6
- 5. Press [ENTER].
 - The cubic interference area is registered.

DATA		DISPLAY	UTILITY	12 🖻	M 😢 🔟	📮 🕀	Þ
JOB ARC WELDING VARIABLE BOOT IN/OUT IN/OUT IN/OUT ROBOT SYSTEM INFO	INTERF INTER METHO CONTR CHECK TEACH COMME S L U R B T	ERENCE AR FERENCE S D OL GROUP MEASURE ING METHOI NT (MAX) 3 4 4 4 3 3 3 3 3 3 3 3 3 3 3 3 3 3 3	EA AXIS IN IGNAL : 1 / 6 AXIS IN COMMANE COMMANE COMMANE D MAX / M 32 64 23 76 74	i4 ITERFEREN POSITIO IIN D 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0			
					PAGE		
Main Menu	Simple	e Menu					

- 8 System Setup
- 8.6 Interference Area

Number Imput of Center Position (WIDTH) and Teaching Center

1. Select "METHOD".

- (1) Each time [SELECT] is pressed, "MAX/MIN" and "CENTER POS" switch alternately.
- (2) Select "CENTER POS".



- 2. Input number for "WIDTH" data and press [ENTER].
 - "WIDTH" is set.

DATA	DISPLAY		2 🖌 😵 🖻	🕞 († 🕒
JOB ARC WELDING VARIABLE BOOT IN/OUT IN/OUT IN/OUT SYSTEM INFO	INTERFERENCE ARE INTERFERENCE SI METHOD CONTROL GROUP CHECK MEASURE TEACHING METHOD COMMENT KMAX> S 51 L 22 U 1 R 1 B 1 T 1	A GNAL: 1 / 64 AXIS INTERF R1 COMMAND POS CENTER POS CENTER POS COMIND	ERENCE	
			PAGE	
Main Menu	Simple Menu			

- 3. Press [MODIFY]
 - A message "Move to the center point and teach" appears.

- 8 System Setup
- 8.6 Interference Area

- The cursor only moves to either "<MIN>" or "<MAX>" at this time.

DATA	EDIT DISPLAY	итістту 12	2 🖌 🗞 🔟	📮 🙌 🖻
JOB ARC WELDING VARIABLE BOOT IN/OUT IN/OUT ROBOT SYSTEM INFO SYSTEM INFO	INTERFERENCE ARE INTERFERENCE SI METHOD CONTROL GROUP CHECK MEASURE TEACHING METHOD COMMENT MAXX S 50 L 221 U C R 0 C B 0 T 0	A GNAL: 1 / 64 AXIS INTERF RI COMMAND POS CENTER POS CENTER POS CENTER POS CENTER POS 0 0 -50 5 -25 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0	ERENCE	
			PAGE	
Main Menu	Simple Menu 🧯	Move to center	point and teach	

- 4. Move the manipulator using the axis keys.
 - Move the manipulator to the center position of the cube using the axis keys.
- 5. Press [ENTER].
 - The center position of the cube is registered.

- 8 System Setup
- 8.6 Interference Area

8.6.4 Clearing the Interference Area Data

1. Select {ROBOT} under the main menu.

DATA	EDIT DISPLAY	ОТТЬТТУ 12	2 🖌 😵 🖸	🕞 († 🕑
JOB ARC WELDING VARIABLE BOOT IN/OUT IN/OUT IN/OUT ROBOT SYSTEM INFO	INTERFERENCE INTERFERENCE METHOD CONTROL GROU CHECK MEASUR TEACHING MET COMMENT K S L U K B T	AREA SIGNAL: 1 64 AXIS INTERF P RT E COMMAND POS HOD CENTER POS 218 118 118 245 195 212 225 225 225 180 180 220	ERENCE SITION → 100 50 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0	
			PAGE	
Main Menu	Simple Menu			

- 2. Select {INTERFERENCE}.
 - The INTERFERENCE AREA window is shown.

DATA		LAY U	TILITY	121	2 📶 🔞	10	(Þ
JOB ARC WELDING VARIABLE BOOT IN/OUT IN/OUT IN/OUT ROBOT SYSTEM INFO	INTERFEREN INTERFERE METHOD CONTROL GI CHECK MEA: TEACHING I COMMENT S L U U R B T	CE AREA NOE SIGNA ROUP SURE METHOD MAX> 218 218 212 212 225 180 220	L: 1 / 6 AXIS IN RT COMMANE CENTER	14 11 ERFE 11 POS 118 195 212 225 180 220	KENCE	> 100 50 0 0 0 0 0		
					PAGE			
Main Menu	Simple Menu							

- 3. Select interference signal to be cleared.
 - Select the desired interference signal number to be cleared using the page key or by number input.
 - When selecting the desired interference signal number by number input, select {PAGE} to input the desired signal number.

- 8 System Setup
- 8.6 Interference Area
- 4. Select {DATA} under the menu.
 - The pull-down menu appears.

DATA	EDIT DISPLAY UTILITY 12 🗹 🕼 🕼 🕞 🙌 🗈
JOB ARC WELDING WARIABLE BOOT IN/OUT IN/OUT IN/OUT BOBOT SYSTEM INFO	INTERFERENCE AREA INTERFERENCE SIGNAL: 1 / 64 METHOD AXIS INTERFERENCE CONTROL GROUP RI CHECK MEASURE COMMAND POSITION TEACHING METHOD DENTER POS COMMENT (MIN) KMAXO (MIN) X 118 L 245 U 212 212 212 R 225 B 180 T 220
	PAGE
Main Menu	Simple Menu

- 5. Select {CLEAR DATA}.
 - The confirmation dialog box appears.

DATA	DISPLAY		? 🔼 📶 % 🔟	🕞 🙌 🖻
ARC WELDING VARIABLE BOOT	INTERFERENCE A INTERFERENCE METHOD CONTROL GROUP CHECK MEASURE TEACHING METH	REA SIGNAL: 1 / 64 AXIS INTER RI COMMAND PO OD CENTER POS Initialize?	FERENCE	
ROBOT SYSTEM INFO	YE	s	NO]
			PAGE	
Main Menu	Simple Menu			

- 6. Select {YES}.
 - All the data of the interference signal number are cleared.

DATA	EDIT	DISPLAY	UTILITY	12 🗷	M 😢 🔟	📮 🕀	▶
JOB ARC WELDI VARIABLE BOOT IN/OUT IN/OUT BODOT SYSTEM INI SYSTEM INI	NTEF INTE INTE COM	REFERENCE AR HOD HOD TROL GROUP CK MEASURE CHING METHO WENT	EA IGNAL: 1 / I XXIS I XXIS I XXIS I COMMAN COMMAN	64 NTERFEREN D POSITIO POS			
					PAGE		
Main Menu	JSimp	le Menu					

- 8 System Setup
- 8.7 Shock Detection Function

8.7 Shock Detection Function

8.7.1 Shock Detection Function

The shock detection function is a function to decrease damage due to the collision by stopping the manipulator without any external sensor when the tool or the manipulator collide with peripheral device.

When the shock is detected either in teach mode or in play mode, the manipulator is stopped immediately.



This function does not completely avoid damage to the peripheral devices; moreover, it does not guarantee the user's safety. Make sure to prepare the safety measures such as the safeguarding etc. Refer to *chapter 1 "Safety" at page 1-1* to *chapter 6 "Test of Program Operation" at page 6-1* for the safety measures in details.

Failure to observe this warning may result in Injury or damage to machinery caused by contact with the manipulator.

8.7.2 Shock Detection Function Setting

The shock detection function is set not to mis-detect the shock even if operating by the ratings load with the maximum speed when shipping from the factory. If tool load information is set correctly, the detection sensitivity can be improved. Moreover, it is possible to set the lower sensitivity of detection only for a specific section where the contact work etc. The sensitivity of detection is set by setting the detection level.

8.7.2.1 Shock Detection Level Setting

The shock detection level is set in the shock detection level set file.

The shock detection level set file are nine condition files as following figure.

- Condition number 1 to 7 are used when the detection level is changed in a specific section in play mode.
- Condition number 8 is used as standard in play mode: this function is operated by the detection level set in this file when playback operation.
- Condition number 9 is for teach mode: the shock detection function applies the detection level set here when the manipulator is operated in teach mode.

The detection level is changed by a job instruction SHCKSET.

- After the instruction is executed, the shock will be detected by the specified detection level when the condition number is specified with the SHCKSET instruction.
- The detection level is returned to standard level when the SHCKRST instruction is executed.

8 System Setup

SUPPLE -MENT

8.7 Shock Detection Function



The detection level of condition number 8 (a standard in play mode) is adopted in play mode excluding the range between SHCKSET and SHCKRST in the job.



①Detection Mode

Indicates the shock detection mode.

2Condition Number (1 to 9)

- 1 to 7: for changing detection level in play mode.
 - 8: for standard detection level in play mode.
 - 9: for detection level in teach mode.

③Function Select

Specifies VALID/INVALID of the shock detection function. The shock detection function is specified by each manipulator with this function.

- Move the cursor to the manipulator of which function is to be enabled or disabled; press [SELECT] to change the function to "VALID" or "INVALID".
- "VALID" and "INVALID" can be changed alternately whenever [SELECT] is pressed. The change is available for all the condition numbers.

- 8 System Setup
- 8.7 Shock Detection Function

(4)Max. Disturbance Force

Indicates the maximum disturbance force to the manipulator when the manipulator is moved in play back operation or axis operation.

Refer to this value when inputting the detection level value in(5). The maximum disturbance force can be cleared by selecting {DATA} à {CLEAR MAX VALUE} in the menu.

⑤Detection Level (Level range: 1 to 500)

Specifies the shock detection level. Set a value larger than the maximum disturbance force.

The value set by default (the level 100) enables the function without false detection even if the manipulator is operated at the maximum speed.

To change DETECT LEVEL, move the cursor to the subject manipulator, and press [SELECT] to display the numeric input status; input the value with a numeric key and press [ENTER]. To increase the detection sensitivity, set the level to small value, and to decrease the sensitivity, set the level to large value.

Method of Shock Detection Level File Setting

- 1. Select {ROBOT} under the main menu.
- 2. Select {SHOCK SENS LEVEL}.
 - The SHOCK DETECT LEVEL window appears.
 - Perform either of the following operations to display the page of desired condition number:
 - (1) Select {PAGE} and input the desired condition number, then press [ENTER].
 - (2) Press the page key to change the page of condition number.
- 3. Select the desired condition number.
- 4. Select the desired item and perform setting.

To avoid false detection during the manipulator operation, set the detection level greater than the maximum disturbance force by 20%.



An emergency stop of the manipulator due to the false detection may become a factor to damage the speed reducers and tools.

<Example>

When the maximum disturbance force is 80, set the detection level at 96 or more.



"Detection level" can be modified only when the security mode is set in management mode.

- 8
- System Setup Shock Detection Function 8.7

8.7.2.2 Tool Load Information Setting

To increase the accuracy of shock detection, set the tool load information in the tool file. Refer to chapter 8.4.3 "Tool Load Information Setting" at page 8-43 for details of the tool load information setting.

8.7.2.3 Instruction of Shock Detection Function

SHCKSET instruction

The SHCKSET instruction changes the shock detection level to the value set in the shock detection level file during play back operation.

The additional items of the SHCKSET instruction are as follows.



ORobot Setting

Specifies the manipulator of which shock detection level is to be modified. If nothing is specified, the modification is applied to the shock detection level of the job control group in this instruction. However, in case of coordinated job, the modification is applied to the shock detection level of the slave axis group.

②Shock Detection Level Condition Number (1 to 7)

Specifies the shock detection level condition number in which the detection level in playback mode is set.

SHCKRST instruction

The shock detection level changed by the SHCKSET instruction is reset and returned to the detection level of the standard (value set in condition number 8) by the SHCKRST instruction.

The additional item of the SHCKRST instruction is as follows.



()Robot Setting

Specifies the manipulator of which shock detection level is to be reset. If nothing is specified, the modification will be applied to the shock detection level of the job control group of this instruction. However, in case of coordinated job, the modification is applied to the shock detection level of the slave axis group.

Instruction Registration

The instruction is registered when the cursor is in the address area in the JOB CONTENT window in teach mode.

- 8 System Setup
- 8.7 Shock Detection Function
- 1. Select {JOB} under the main menu.

	JOB	EDIT	DISPLAY	UTILITY	121	2 🖌 🐝 🖻	📮 🕀		(
Address – Area	JOB ARC WELDING VARIABLE BOOT IN/OUT IN/OUT ROBOT SYSTEM INFO	JOB J:WO OCONT 00001 10002 0003 0004	CONTENT R(1 R(0, GROUP: MOVJ POOO MOVJ POOO MOVJ POOO MARIT IN#(1 END L UJ UJ=0.78	R1 VJ=50.00 VJ=50.00)=0N		S:0002 TOOL: **		•	Instruction
	Main Menu	Simp	le Menu						

- 2. Select {JOB}.
- 3. Move the cursor in the address area.

SHCKSET

- 1. Move the cursor to the immediately preceding line where the SHCKSET instruction is to be registered.
- 2. Press [INFORM LIST].
 - The inform list dialog box is shown.

SHCKSET	OTHER
SHCKRST	SAME
	PRIOR

- 3. Select SHCKSET instruction.
 - (1) SHCKSET instruction is shown in the input buffer line.



- (2) Change the value of additional item and numerical data.
- (3) Press [INSERT] then [ENTER].
- 4. Change the value of additional item and numerical data.
 - < When registering the instruction as it is >
 Operate the step 5 when registering the instruction in the input buffer line as it is.
 - < When adding or changing the additional item >
 - When changing the shock detection level
 - (1) When changing the shock detection level, move the cursor to the shock detection level condition number; hold down [SHIFT] and press the up/down cursor key to change the condition number.

• When the value is input with the numeric key

I) When the value is input with the numeric key, press [SELECT]

SHCKSET SSL#

8.7 Shock Detection Function

to display the input buffer line.



II) Press [ENTER] to change the number in the input buffer line.

When robot specification is added

 When robot specification is added, move the cursor to the instruction in the input buffer line and press [SELECT] to display the DETAIL window.



- II) Move the cursor to "UNUSED" of "ROBOT/STATION", and press [SELECT].
- III) The selection box appears.
- IV) Point the cursor to the robot to be added and press [SELECT].



- V) When the addition of robot is completed, press [ENTER].
- VI) The DETAIL window closes and the JOB CONTENT window appears.
- 5. Press [INSERT] then [ENTER].
 - The instruction displayed in the input buffer line is registered.
- 8 System Setup
- 8.7 Shock Detection Function

SHCKRST

- 1. Move the cursor to the immediately preceding line where the SHCKRST instruction is to be registered.
- 2. Press [INFORM LIST].
 - The inform list appears.



- 3. Select SHCKRST instruction.
 - SHCKRST instruction appears in the input buffer line.

JOB	EDI	IT	DISPLAY	UTILITY	12	2 🖌 😵 🗹	📮 👆
ARC WELDI ARC WELDI VARIABLE BOOT IN/OUT IN/OUT ROBOT SYSTEM INI	NG :	JOB C J: WOR CONTR 0002 0003 0004 0005	ONTENT K1 OL_GROUP: MOVJ POOD MOVJ POOD MOVJ POOD SHOKSET SS WAIT IN#(1 END	R1 VJ=50.00 ≵#(1))=0N		S:0002 TOOL: **	
Main Menu	,		e Menu				

- 4. Change the value of the additional item.
 - < When registering the instruction as it is >
 Operate the step 5 when registering the instruction in the input buffer line as it is.
 - < When adding or changing the additional item >
 - (1) When adding the robot specification, move the cursor to instruction in the input buffer line and press [SELECT] to display the DETAIL window.

JOB	EDIT 🛛 DISPLAY 🔄 UTILITY 🗍 🏠 🔀 🖾 🥵 🌆 🗔 🕀
	DETAIL EDIT SHORST DEDUCTATION INTER
ARC WELDING	
VARIABLE B001	
ROBOT	
SYSTEM INFO	SHCKRST
Main Menu	Simple Menu

(2) Move the cursor to "UNUSED" of "ROBOT/STATION", and press [SELECT].

- 8 System Setup
- 8.7 Shock Detection Function
 - (3) The selection box appears.
 - (4) Point the cursor to the robot to be added and press [SELECT].

JOB	EDIT DISPLA	12 🗹 📶 👒 🔟 寻 🙌
JOB	DETAIL EDIT SHCKRST ROBOT/STATION	
VARIABLE B001		
ROBOT		
SYSTEM INFO	SHCKRST]
Main Menu	Simple Menu	

- (5) When the addition of robot is completed, press [ENTER].
- (6) The DETAIL window closes and the JOB CONTENT window appears.
- 5. Press [INSERT] then [ENTER].
 - The instruction displayed in the input buffer line is registered.

8 System Setup

8.7 Shock Detection Function

8.7.2.4 Resetting the Shock Detected

When the collision of tool/manipulator and peripheral device is detected with the shock detection function, the manipulator stops instantaneously with alarm output. In this case, the shock detection alarm is displayed.

DATA	EDIT	DISPLAY	UTILITY	12	2 🖌 🗞 🖻	O (†
JOB ARC WELDING VARIABLE BOOT IN/OUT IN/OUT IN/OUT SYSTEM INFO SYSTEM INFO	ALAR	M <mark>I4315</mark> Llision de' Roboti (<mark>S</mark> Li	TECT JRBT]			
					RESET	
Main Menu	Simp	le Menu				

The shock detection alarm in teach mode and play mode can be reset by the following operation.

- 1. Press [SELECT].
 - The alarm is reset when "RESET" is selected on the alarm display, and the shock detection status is released.
- 2. Operation after resetting the detection status.
 - In teach mode, the JOG operation of the manipulator is enabled by resetting the status.
 - In the play mode, move the manipulator once to the safety position in the teach mode to check the damage though the playback operation is possible after resetting the status.



When manipulator is stopped instantaneously while having contact with the object and the detection alarm is tried to reset on the alarm window, the situation in which the alarm cannot be reset may occur since the collision may be detected again after resetting.

In this case, set the collision detection function "INVALID", or increase the detection level in teach mode and retreat the manipulator to a safety position.

- 8 System Setup
- 8.8 User Coordinate Setting

8.8 User Coordinate Setting

8.8.1 User Coordinates

Definition of the User Coordinates

User coordinates are defined by three points that have been taught to the manipulator through axis operations. These three defining points are ORG, XX, and XY, as shown in the diagram below. These three points of positional data are registered in a user coordinate file.



ORG is the home position, and XX is a point on the X-axis. XY is a point on the Y-axis side of the user coordinates that has been taught, and the directions of Y- and Z-axes are determined by point XY.



It is important that the two points ORG and XX be taught accurately.

User Coordinate Files

Up to 63 kinds of user coordinates can be registered. Each coordinate has a user coordinate No. and is called a user coordinate file.



System Setup

8

8.8 User Coordinate Setting

8.8.2 User Coordinate Setting

- 8.8.2.1 Selecting the User Coordinate File
 - 1. Select {ROBOT} under the main menu.
 - 2. Select {USER COORDINATE}.
 - (1) The USER COORDINATE window appears.



- (2) The "●" mark indicates that the user coordinates is completed to set and the "O" mark indicates that it is not completed.
- (3) To check the position of the user coordinates select {DISPLAY} \rightarrow {COORDINATE DATA}.
- (4) The following window appears.

DATA	DISPLAY	UTILITY	2 🖌 😵 🔟	🕞 († 🕑
	USER COORDINA USER COORD I NAME: ITEM_	TE NO.: 1 / 63 I		
ARC WELDING VARIABLE BOOT IN/DUT	X 133 Y 1 Z 109	3.745 mm Rx J.197 mm Ry 3.147 mm Rz	-141.3664 des. -39.5973 des. 99.2557 des.	
			PAGE	
Main Menu	Simple Menu			

3. Select the user coordinate number.

- 8 System Setup
- 8.8 User Coordinate Setting
- 8.8.2.2 Teaching the User Coordinates
 - 1. Select the robot.
 - Select "**" on the upper left of the window to select the subject robot. (This operation can be omitted if the robot selection has already been made or if there is only one robot.)

DATA	EDIT	DISPLAY	UTILITY	2 🖌 🗞 🔟	2 (h
JOB ARC WELDING VARIABLE BOOT IN/OUT IN/OUT ROBOT SYSTEM INFO	USER USE RI:R R2:R F E T	COORDINATE R COORD NO OBOTI J J J J J	.: 04 * TOOL: 00 * * * * *	SET POS. ORG < STATUS > ORG : O XX : O XY : O	
		DMPLETE	CANCEL		
Main Menu	Simp	le Menu			

- 2. Select "SET POS".
 - Select the teaching point.

DATA	DISPLAY	UTILITY	12 🗹 🕼 😻 🔯 🕒 🙌
JOB ARC WELDING VARIABLE BOOT IN/OUT MOBOT SYSTEM INFO SYSTEM INFO	USER COORDINATE USER COORDIN R1 :S L U R B T	D.: 04 * TooL: 0 * * * * *	10 SET POS. < STATUS > XX ORG : O XX : O XY : O XY : O
	COMPLETE	CANCEL	
Main Menu	Simple Menu		

- 3. Move the manipulator to the desired position with the axis keys.
- 4. Press [MODIFY] then [ENTER].
 - Taught position is registered.
 - Repeat the steps 2 to 4 to teach ORG, XX and XY.

- 8 System Setup
- 8.8 User Coordinate Setting
 - "●" indicates that teaching is completed and "O" indicates that it is not completed.

DATA	EDIT	DISPLAY	UTILITY	12	2 🖌 😢	10 🕞 ((+)
ARC WELDIN ARC WELDIN VARIABLE BOOT IN/OUT IN/OUT BOBOT SYSTEM INF		COORDINATE ER COORD NO S L U R B T	5).: 04 18 TOOL: -1287 -252 -184 1116 89	00	SET POS.] < STATUS > ORG : ● XX : ● XY : ●	XY	
		COMPLETE	CANCEL				
Main Menu	Sim	ple Menu					

- To check the taught positions, call up the required window among ORG to XY and press [FWD]. The manipulator moves to the set position.
- If there is a difference between the current position of the manipulator and the displayed position data, "ORG", "XX", or "XY" flashes.
- 5. Select "COMPLETE".
 - User coordinates are registered in the file.
 - Once the user coordinate setting is completed, the following window appears.

DATA	DIT	SPLAY	UTILITY	2 🖌 🔅 🔟	🗣 (h
	USER COOF NO.	NDINATE SET	NAME		
ARC WELDING	01 02	•	ITEM_1 ITEM_2		
VARIABLE	03 04 05		ITEM_3		
B001	06 07	00			
	08 09 10	000			
ROBOT	10 11 12	000		_	
SYSTEM INFO	13 14 15	000			
Main Menu	Simple Me	nu			

- 8 System Setup
- 8.8 User Coordinate Setting

8.8.2.3 Clearing the User Coordinates

- 1. Select {DATA} under the pull-down menu.
- 2. Select {CLEAR DATA}.
 - The confirmation dialog box appears.

DATA	EDIT	DISPLAY	UTILITY	12 🖻	1 😵 🖻	-
	USER C USER R1 :S L	OORDINATE COORD NO	.: 04 18 TOOL: -819	00 SET < ST/	POS. <u> ORG </u> ATUS >	
VARIABLE	U R -		3 -184	ORG XX		1
IN/DUT			Ulear da	ta?		
]	YES		<u>N0</u>		1
) сон	DI ETE	CONICEL			
Main Menu	Simple	Menu	CANUEL			

- 3. Select {YES}.
 - All data is cleared.

DATA	DISPLAY		2 🗹 🖌 👒 🔟 🗆	} (h
ARC WELDING WARIABLE BOOT IN/OUT IN/OUT IN/OUT BOBOT SYSTEM INFO	USER COORD INA USER COORD I I I I I I I I I I I I I I I I I I I	TE NO.: 04 * TOOL: 00 * * * * *	SET POS. [DRG] < STATUS > ORG : O XX : O XY : O XY : O	
	COMPLETE	CANCEL		
Main Menu	Simple Menu			

8 System Setup

keys.

8.9 Overrun / Tool Shock Sensor Releasing

8.9 Overrun / Tool Shock Sensor Releasing



If the manipulator stops by overrun detection or tool shock sensor detection, release the overrun or tool shock sensor by the following procedure and reset the alarm and move the manipulator with the axis

- 1. Select {ROBOT} under the main menu.
- 2. Select {OVERRUN & S-SENSOR}.
 - The OVERRUN & SHOCK SENSOR window appears.
 - Select either "EMERGENCY STOP" or "HOLD" to set the item "SHOCK SENSOR STOP COMMAND" which specifies the stop condition in the current shock sensor detection.
 - "E-STOP" and "HOLD" are displayed alternately every time [SELECT] is pressed.

DATA	EDIT D	ISPLAY	UTILITY	12	2 🖌 😣	(†)
JOB ARC WELDING VARIABLE BOOT IN/OUT IN/OUT IN/OUT ROBOT SYSTEM INFO	OVERRUNK SHOCK S OCCUR G ROBOTI ROBOT2 STATION	SHOCK S ENSOR S RP	ENSOR TOP COMMAND OVERRI O	UN	E-STOP S-SENSOR O O	
	RELEA	ASE				
Main Menu	Simple M	lenu				

- 3. Select "RELEASE".
 - The control group in which overrun or shock sensor is detected is indicated with "•".

8 System Setup

8.9 Overrun / Tool Shock Sensor Releasing

 If "RELEASE" is selected, overrun or tool shock sensor is released and "CANCEL" indication will be displayed.

DATA	EDIT	DISPLAY		2 📝 📶 🚳 🔟	🗣 🙌
JOB ARC WELDING VARIABLE BOOT IN/OUT IN/OUT ROBOT SYSTEM INFO	OVERF SHOU OCCL ROBU ROBU STA	RUN&SHOCK S CK SENSOR S JR GRP JT1 JT2 TION1	ENSOR TOP COMMAND OVERRUN O O	E-STOP S-SENSOR O	
	F	RELEASE			
Main Menu	Simp	le Menu			

- 4. Select "ALM RST".
 - The alarm is reset and manipulator can be moved with the axis keys.



After releasing the overrun or tool shock sensor, if "CAN-CEL" is selected or the window is changed to the other one, the release of the overrun or tool shock sensor will be canceled.

- 8 System Setup
- 8.10 Soft Limit Release Function

8.10 Soft Limit Release Function

The switches that are set to detect the motion range of the manipulator are called limit switches. The operating range is monitored by the software in order to stop motion before these limit switches are reached. These software limits are called "soft limits". The operating range of the manipulator is controlled by the following two soft limits.

- · Maximum motion range for each axis
- Cubic operation area set parallel to the robot coordinate system

These soft limits are continually monitored by the system, and the manipulator automatically stops when the its TCP reaches a soft limit.

When the manipulator is stopped at a soft limit, temporarily release the soft limit by the following procedure, then move the manipulator away from the soft limit in a direction opposite to the earlier operation direction.

- 1. Select {ROBOT} under the main menu.
- 2. Select {LIMIT RELEASE}.
 - The LIMIT RELEASE window appears.



- 3. Select "SOFT LIMIT RELEASE".
 - Each time [SELECT] is pressed, "VALID" and "INVALID" switch alternately.
 - When "SOFT LIMIT RELEASE" is set to "VALID", a message "Soft limits have been released" appears.

DATA	EDIT	DISPLAY	UTILITY	12 🗳 🖌	1	🞝 🕀
JOB ARC VELDING VARIABLE BOOT IN/OUT IN/OUT IN/OUT SYSTEM INFO	LIMIT F SOFT ALL I	RELEASE LIMIT REL IMIT REL	LEASE	VA IN	<u>ID</u> /ALID	
Main Menu	Simple	Menu	Softlimit	s have been r	eleased	

 When "SOFT LIMIT RELEASE" is set to "INVALID," a message "Softlimits off released" is displayed for a few seconds.



- The taught data cannot be registered when the soft limit is being released.
- The setting of "SOFT LIMIT RELEASE" becomes "INVALID" when the mode is changed to the play mode.

8 System Setup

8.11 All Limit Release Function

8.11 All Limit Release Function



To operate the manipulator with all limits released, pay extra attention to ensure the safety of the surrounding operation environment.

Failure to observe this caution may result in injury or damage to equipment due to the unexpected manipulator motion exceeding its range of motion.

The following limits can be released with the All Limit Release function:

Limit Type	Contents
Mechanical Limit	Limit to check manipulator's range of motion.
L-U Interference	Limit to check L- and U-axis interference area.
Soft Limit on Each Axis	Soft limit to check manipulator's range of motion.
Cube Interference	Limit to check cube interference area set by user.



All limit release function is not available if the security mode is not in the management mode. Refer to *chapter 7 "Security System" at page 7-1* for details on the security modes.

- 1. Select {ROBOT} under the main menu.
- 2. Select {LIMIT RELEASE}.
 - The LIMIT RELEASE window appears.

DATA	EDIT	DISPLAY	UTILITY	12 🖻 📶 👒 🔯] 🕞 👘
JOB ARC WELDIN VARIABLE BOOT IN/OUT IN/OUT ROBOT SYSTEM INI SYSTEM INI		IMIT RELEASE SOFT LIMIT RE ALL LIMIT REL	LEASE	INVALID INVALID	
Main Menu		Simple Menu			

- 8 System Setup
- 8.11 All Limit Release Function
- 3. Select "ALL LIMITS RELEASE".
 - "VALID" and "INVALID" are displayed alternately every time [SELECT] is pressed.
 - When ALL LIMIT RELEASE is changed to "VALID", a message "All limits have been released" is displayed. When the setting changes to "INVALID", a message "All limits off released" is displayed for a few seconds.



8 System Setup

8.12 Instruction Level Setting

8.12 Instruction Level Setting

8.12.1 Setting Contents

8.12.1.1 Instruction Set

There are three instruction sets that can be used when registering the instructions for the robot programming language (INFORM III): the subset instruction set, the standard instruction set, and the expanded instruction set.

Subset Instruction Set

The instructions displayed in the instruction list are limited to just those that are most frequently used, reducing the number of instructions that can be registered. Since few instructions are shown, selection and input are simple.

Standard Instruction Set / Expanded Instruction Set

All the INFORM III instructions can be used. The number of additional items to be used in each instruction differ in the standard instruction set and expansion instruction set.

In the standard instruction set, the following functions cannot be used. However, operation becomes easier because the number of data items decreases when registering an instruction.

- · Use of local variables and arrangement variable
- Use of variables for additional items (Example: MOVJ VJ = 1000)

When instructions are executed, for example during playback, all the instructions can be executed regardless of the instruction set used.



Instruction set

- 8 System Setup
- 8.12 Instruction Level Setting

8.12.1.2 Learning Function

When an instruction is entered from the instruction list, the additional items that were entered last time are also shown. This function can simplify instruction input.

To register the same additional items as those in the former operation, register them without changing.

1. An instructions are registered.

0002 MUVJ 0003 WAIT	PUUU VJ=50.00 IN#(10)=ON		
0004 END			

 The next time an attempt is made to register the same instruction as in 1, the same additional items as were registered last time are also shown in the input buffer line.

SYSTEM INFO	WATT IN#(10)=ON
Main Menu	Simple Menu

8.12.2 Setting the Instruction Set Level

- 1. Select {SETUP} under the main menu.
- 2. Select {TEACHIG COND}.
 - The TEACHING CONDITION window appears.



- 8 System Setup
- 8.12 Instruction Level Setting
- 3. Select "LANGUAGE LEVEL".
 - The selection list appears.

DATA	EDIT	DISPLAY	UTILITY	12 🛛	: 🖌 😣 🔞	🗣 🙌
EX. MEMOR SETUP DISPLAY SET	Y TEACH LANC MOVE BUZZ STEF STEF TOOL TOOL POS JOB	TINS CONDIT JUAGE LEVEL RUCTION IN ER WHEN PO 2 ONLY CHAN /CYLINDRIC NO. INITERL TEACH ONLY UNDELETE F	ION SETTING PUT LEARNIN ON SET POSI' SITION TEAC GING AL H OCK FOR STEP 'JOG CONTROL UNCTION	3 TION HING P ENTRY _ GROUP	SUBSET STANDARD EXPANDED ICONSIDER PROHIBIT RECT PERMIT PERMIT PROHIBIT INVALID	
Main Menu	Simp	le Menu				

- 4. Select desired language level.
 - Language level is set.



- 8 System Setup
- 8.12 Instruction Level Setting

8.12.3 Setting the Learning Function

The learning function is set at "VALID" by default.

- 1. Select {SETUP} under the main menu.
- 2. Select {TEACHIG COND}.
 - The TEACHING CONDITION window appears.



- 3. Select "INSTRUCTION INPUT LEARNING".
 - VALID" and "INVALID" are displayed alternately every time [SELECT] is pressed.



- 8 System Setup
- 8.13 Setting the Controller Clock

8.13 Setting the Controller Clock

The clock inside the DX100 controller can be set as follows.

- 1. Select {SETUP} under the main menu.
- 2. Select {DATE/TIME}.
 - The DATE/CLOCK SET window appears.



- 3. Select "DATE" or "CLOCK.
 - "The input buffer line appears.
- 4. Input the new date/time.
 - For instance, to set the date to August 1, 2008, input "2008.8.1". To set the time at twelve o'clock, enter "12.00".
- 5. Press [ENTER].
 - The date/time is changed.



- 8 System Setup
- 8.14 Setting the Play Speed

8.14 Setting the Play Speed

- 1. Select {SETUP} under the main menu.
- 2. Select {SET SPEED}.
 - The SPEED SET window is shown.

DATA	EDIT DISPLAY		2 🖌 😵 🔟	🕞 🕆 🕨
EX. MEMORY PARAMETER MEETIN SETUP MEETIN DISPLAY SETUP MA	SPEED SET	R1 :1 0.78 % 2 1.56 % 3 3.12 % 4 6.25 % 5 12.50 % 6 25.00 % 7 50.00 %		
			PAGE	
Main Menu	Simple Menu			

- 3. Press the page key
 - When two or more manipulators and stations exist in the system, use the page key to change the control group, or click on {PAGE} to select the desired control group.

DATA	EDIT	DISPLAY	UTILITY	12 🗳	1 🗞 🔟	📮 🖰	Þ
EX. MEMORY PARAMETER ETER SETUP M DISPLAY SETUP CA	SPEED JOIN	SET	R1 :1 0. 2 1. 3 3. 4 6. 5 12. 6 25. 7 50. 8 100.	78 % 56 % 12 % 50 % 50 % 00 %			
				R1:F R2:F S1:S	ROBOT1 ROBOT2 STATION1		
					PAGE		
Main Menu	Simple	e Menu					

- 4. Select "JOINT" or "LNR/CIR".
 - The type of speed alternately changes from "JOINT" to "LNR/CIR".

DATA	DIT	DISPLAY	UTILITY	12 🗹 🖬 😢 🚾 🕒 🕒
EX. MEMORY PARAMETER BESTA SETUP B DISPLAY SETUP CA	SPEED	SET /CIR	R1 :1 2 1 3 3 4 6 5 12 6 24 7 48 8 96	72 cm/min 50 cm/min 00 cm/min 00 cm/min 00 cm/min 00 cm/min 00 cm/min

- 8 System Setup
- 8.14 Setting the Play Speed
- 5. Select the speed to modify.
 - The input buffer line appears.
- 6. Input the speed value.
- 7. Press [ENTER].
 - The speed is modified.



- 8 System Setup
- 8.15 Numeric Key Customize Function

8.15 Numeric Key Customize Function

8.15.1 What is the Numeric Key Customize Function?

With this function, the user can set the function of an application that has been allocated to the numeric keys of the programming pendant to the other function.

Since any frequently used operation can be allocated to the numeric keys on the programming pendant, decreased key operations reduce the teaching time.



The Numeric Key Customize Function is allowed to set only when the security mode is in the management mode.

8.15.2 Allocatable Functions

There are two allocation methods as follows:

- Key Allocation (EACH)
- Key Allocation (SIM)

8.15.2.1 Key Allocation (EACH)

With key allocation (EACH), the manipulator operates according to the allocated function when the numeric key is pressed. The allocatable functions are listed below.

Function	Description
Manufacturer	Allocated by Yaskawa. Allocating another function
allocation	invalidates the function allocated by the manufacturer.
Instruction allocation	Allocates any instructions assigned by the user.
Job call allocation	Allocates job call instructions (CALL instructions). The jobs to be called are only those registered in the reserved job names. (Specified by the registration No.)
Display allocation	Allocates any displays assigned by the user.

- 8 System Setup
- 8.15 Numeric Key Customize Function

8.15.2.2 Key Allocation (SIM)

With key allocation (SIM), the manipulator operates according to the allocated function when the [INTERLOCK] and the numeric key are pressed at the same time. The allocatable functions are listed below.

Function	Description
Alternate output allocation	Turns ON/OFF the specified user output signal when [INTERLOCK] and the allocated Numeric key are pressed at the same time.
Momentary output allocation	Turns ON the specified user output signal user when [INTERLOCK] and the allocated user key are pressed at the same time.
Pulse output allocation	Turns ON the specified user output signal only for the specified period when [INTERLOCK] and the allocated Numeric key are pressed at the same time.
Group output allocation (4-bit/8-bit)	Sends the specified output to the specified general group output signals when [INTERLOCK] and the allocated Numeric key are pressed at the same time.
Analog output allocation	Sends the specified voltage to the specified output port when [INTERLOCK] and the allocated Numeric key are pressed at the same time.
Analog incremental output allocation	Sends the voltage increased by the specified value to the specified output port when [INTERLOCK] and the allocated Numeric key are pressed at the same time.



In a system for multiple applications, a numeric key can be allocated for each application.

- 8 System Setup
- 8.15 Numeric Key Customize Function

8.15.3 Allocating an Operation

- 8.15.3.1 Allocation Window
 - 1. Select {SETUP} under the main menu.
 - 2. Select {KEY ALLOCATION}.
 - The KEY ALLOCATION (EACH) window appears.



- 3. Select {DISPLAY}.
 - Pull-down menu appears.
 - To call up the KEY ALLOCATION (SIM) window, select {ALLOCATE SIM. KEY}.

DATA	EDIT	DISPLAY	UTILITY	12 🗹 🖬 🎕 🔟 寻 👘
EX. MEMOR	Y KEY APP	ALLOCATE EAG	CH AL	LOCATION CONTENT
PARAMETER		ALLOCATE SIN Key	м.	
SETUP		MAKER MAKER		
	23	MAKER MAKER		
DISPLAY SET	UP 4 5	MAKER	_	

- 8 System Setup
- 8.15 Numeric Key Customize Function
- 4. Select {ALLOCATE SIM. KEY}.
 - The KEY ALLOCATION (SIM) window appears.
 - In a system multiple applications, press the page key is to change the window to the allocation window for each application, or click on {PAGE} to select the desired application number.

DATA	EDIT	DISPLAY	UTILITY	12 🖻 📶 👒	10 🕞 🙌
EX. MEMORY PARAMETER PARAMETER SETUP M DISPLAY SETUF M A3	KEY A APF KEY 0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	LLOCATION(S 'LI.NO.:1 FUNCTION MAKER MAKER MAKER MAKER MAKER MAKER MAKER MAKER MAKER MAKER MAKER MAKER MAKER		LOCATION CONTENT	
Main Menu	Simp	le Menu			

8.15.3.2 Instruction Allocation

- 1. Set this function in the KEY ALLOCATION (EACH) window. Move the cursor to "FUNCTION" of the key to be allocated and press [SELECT].
 - Selection list appears.

DATA	DISPLA	Y UTILITY	12 🗳 🖬 👒	0 🗣 🙌
EX. MEMORY PARAMETER EEST SETUP E DISPLAY SETUP E A A	KEY ALLOCATI APPLI.NO.: KEY FUNCT: TINSTR 0 JOB C/ 1 DISPL/ 1 DISPL/ 1 MAKER 3 MAKER 3 MAKER 4 MAKER 5 MAKER 6 MAKER 8 MAKER 9 MAKER	DIV(EACH)	LOCATION CONTENT	
Main Menu	Simple Menu			

- 2. Select "INSTRUCTION".
 - The instruction is shown in the "ALLOCATION CONTENT".

DATA	EDIT	DISPLAY	UTILITY	12 🗷 📶 🚳 🐼 🗔 寻 👘
EX. MEMOR	Y KEY APP	ALLOCATION(E PLI.NO.:1 / FUNCTION	EACH) Ali	LOCATION CONTENT
SETUP	3 - 0 1 2	INSTRUCTIO MAKER MAKER MAKER MAKER		

- 8 System Setup
- 8.15 Numeric Key Customize Function
 - (1) To change the instruction, move the cursor to the instruction and press [SELECT]. Then the instruction group list appears.

DATA	EDIT	ISPLAY	UTILITY	12 🗳 🛓	1 👒 🔟	🗣 🕀	
EX. MEMORY	KEY ALLO APPLI.I	CATION(EAC NO.:1) (H)				IN/OUT
	KEY FI	UNCTION		OCATION CC	NTENT	_	CONTROL
	. MA	KER	-				DEVICE
SETUP	1 MA	KER					MOTION
<u> </u>	2 MA 3 MA	KER KER	-				ARITH
DISPLAY SETUP	4 MA 5 MA	KER KER	-				SHIFT
	6 MA	KER KER	-				OTHER
	8 MA	KER	-				
	9 <u>IMA</u>	KEK					
Main Menu	Simple M	enu					

- (2) Select the group which contains the instruction to modify.
- (3) When the instruction list dialog box is shown, select the instruction to be changed.

DATA	EDIT DISPLAY	UTILITY	12 🖻 📶 🥫) 🔟 🖵 (†	9
EX. MEMORY PARAMETER BEBU SETUP B DISPLAY SETUP C A A	KEY ALLOCATIO APPLI.NO.1 - INSTRUC - MAKER 0 MAKER 1 MAKER 2 MAKER 3 MAKER 3 MAKER 5 MAKER 5 MAKER 6 MAKER 7 MAKER 7 MAKER	N(EACH) ON AL TION DOUT		DOUT DIN WAIT PULSE	IN/OUT CONTROL DEVICE MOTION ARITH SHIFT OTHER
	9 MAKER				
Main Menu	Simple Menu				

- 8 System Setup
- 8.15 Numeric Key Customize Function

8.15.3.3 Job Call Allocation

- Set this function in the KEY ALLOCATION (EACH) window.
- 1. Move the cursor to the "FUNCTION" of the key to be allocated and press [SELECT].
 - A selection list appears.
- 2. Select "JOB CALL".
 - The reserved job registration No. is shown in the "ALLOCATION CONTENT" (reserved job registration No.: 1 to 10).

DATA	EDIT	DISPLAY	UTILITY	12 🖻 📶 % 🔟	🗣 🙌
EX. MEMORY	KEY A APF	LLOCATION(E LI.NO.:1 ' FUNCTION	EACH) Al I	LOCATION CONTENT	
		INSTRUCTIO			
SETUP		MAKER	_		
DISPLAY SETUR	4 5 6	MAKER MAKER MAKER	_		
	7 8 9	MAKER MAKER MAKER			
Main Menu	Simp	le Menu			

- (1) To change the reserved job registration No. move the cursor to the No. and press [SELECT]. Then input buffer line appears.
- (2) Input the number to be changed, and press [ENTER].

8.15.3.4 Display Allocation

Set this function in the KEY ALLOCATION (EACH) window.

- 1. Move the cursor to the "FUNCTION" of the key to be allocated and press [SELECT].
 - Selection list appears.
- 2. Select [DISPLAY].
- 3. Move the cursor to "ALLOCATION CONTENT" and press [SELECT].
 - Character input is available.

- 8 System Setup
- 8.15 Numeric Key Customize Function
- 4. Input the name of the reserved window and press [ENTER].
 - The reserved name input to the "ALLOCATION CONTENT" is shown.

DATA	IT DISPLAY UTILITY 12 🗹 😒 🚾 📮 🙌
EX. MEMORY	KEY ALLOCATION(EACH) APPLI.NO.:1 KEY FUNCTION ALLOCATION CONTENT
	- INSTRUCTION WAIT . JOB CALL 1 0 DISPLAY PRESENT POINT
	1 MAKER 2 MAKER 3 MAKER 4 MAKER
Aa	5 MAKER 6 MAKER 7 MAKER
	8 MAKER 9 MAKER
Main Menu	Simple Menu

- 5. Open the window for allocation.
- 6. Press [INTERLOCK] and the allocated key at the same time.
 - A message "Reserved display registered" appears, and the window is registered.
 - In this case, the CURRENT POSITION window is registered by pressing [INTERLOCK] + [0] with the CURRENT POSITION window displayed on the screen.

DATA	DIT DISPLAY UTILITY 12 🖬 😒 🔤 🖙 🔭 🛛 🛛
EX. MEMORY PARAMETER PARAMETER SETUP B DISPLAY SETUP C A	KEY ALLOCATION(EACH) APPLI.NO.:1 KEY FUNCTION JUD CALL 0 DISPLAY PRESENT_POINT 1 MAKER 3 MAKER 5 MAKER 6 MAKER 9 MAKER
Main Menu	Simple Menu 🚺 Reserved display registered

- 8 System Setup
- 8.15 Numeric Key Customize Function

8.15.3.5 Alternate Output Allocation

Set this function in the KEY ALLOCATION (SIM) window.

- 1. Move the cursor to the "FUNCTION" of the key to be allocated and press [SELECT].
 - Selection list appears.

DATA E	DISPLAY	UTILITY	12 🗹 🖌 😵 🔟	🕞 🙌
EX. MEMORY PARAMETER PARAMETER SETUP M DISPLAY SETUP A A	KEY ALLOCATIO APPLI.NO.:11 KEY FUNCTIO ALTERN/ O MOMENT/ ALTERN/ O MOMENT/ 1 4 BIT (3 ANALOG 4 DISPLA' 6 MAKER 7 MAKER 8 MAKER 9 MAKER	N(SIM)	CATION CONTENT	
Main Menu	Simple Menu			

- 2. Select "ALTERNATE OUTPUT".
 - The output No. is displayed in the "ALLOCATION CONTENT".

DATA	EDIT	DISPLAY	UTILITY	12 🖻 📶 👒 🕅	o 🖵 🙌
EX. MEMOR	KEY A APP KEY - 0 1 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	ALLOCATION(PLI.NO.:1 / FUNCTION ALTERNATE MAKER MAKER MAKER MAKER MAKER MAKER MAKER MAKER MAKER MAKER MAKER MAKER	ALI NO. [LOCATION CONTENT	
Main Menu	Simp	le Menu			

- (1) To change the output No., move the cursor to the No. and press [SELECT]. Then numeric value can be entered.
- (2) Input the number to be changed, and press [ENTER].

- 8 System Setup
- 8.15 Numeric Key Customize Function

8.15.3.6 Momentary Output Allocation

Set this function in the KEY ALLOCATION (SIM) window.

- 1. Move the cursor to the "FUNCTION" of the key to be allocated and press [SELECT].
 - A selection list appears.
- 2. Select "MOMENTARY OUTPUT".
 - The output No. is displayed in the "ALLOCATION CONTENT".

DATA	EDIT DISPLAY	UTILITY	12 🗹 📶 👒 🔟 🕻	🤰 (h
EX. MEMORY	KEY ALLOCATION APPLI.NO.:1 KEY FUNCTION	(SIM) N ALI	LOCATION CONTENT	
	- ALTERNATE . MOMENTARY 0 MAKER	NO. [1	
	1 MAKER 2 MAKER 3 MAKER	_		
	4 MAKER 5 MAKER 6 MAKER			
	9 MAKER 9 MAKER			
Main Menu	Simple Menu			

- (1) To change the output No., move the cursor to the No. and press [SELECT]. Then numeric value can be entered.
- (2) Input the number to be changed, and press [ENTER].

8.15.3.7 Pulse Output Allocation

Set this function in the KEY ALLOCATION (SIM) window.

- 1. Move the cursor to the "FUNCTION" of the key to be allocated and press [SELECT].
 - A selection list appears.
- 2. Select "PULSE OUTPUT".
 - The output No. and output time are displayed in the "ALLOCATION CONTENT".

DATA E	DIT 🛛 DISPLAY 🖉 UTILITY 🗍 🔃 🗹 😒 🖾 📑 🕀
EX. MEMORY PARAMETER PARAMETER SETUP DISPLAY SETUP CAS	KEY ALLOCATION(SIM) APPLI.NO.:1 KEY FUNCTION ALLOCATION CONTENT - ALTERNATE NO. 1 MOMENTARY NO. 1 MOMENTARY NO. 1 MAKER 2 MAKER 3 MAKER 4 MAKER 6 MAKER 9 MAKER
Main Menu	Simple Menu

(1) To change the output No. or output time, move the cursor to the

DX100	8 System Setup 8.15 Numeric Key Customize Function
	No. or time and press [SELECT]. Then numeric value can be entered.
	(2) Input the number or time to be changed, and press [ENTER].

8.15.3.8 Group (4-bit/8-bit) Output Allocation

Set this function in the KEY ALLOCATION (SIM) window.

- 1. Move the cursor to the "FUNCTION" of the key to be allocated and press [SELECT].
 - A selection list appears.
- 2. Select "4 BIT OUTPUT" or "8 BIT OUTPUT".
 - The output No. and output value are displayed in the "ALLOCATION CONTENT".



- To change the output No. or output value, move the cursor to the No. or value and press [SELECT]. Then numeric value can be entered.
- (2) Input the number or value to be changed, and press [ENTER].

8.15.3.9 Analog Output Allocation

Set this function in the KEY ALLOCATION (SIM) window.

1. Move the cursor to the "FUNCTION" of the key to be allocated and press [SELECT].

- A selection list appears.

- 8 System Setup
- 8.15 Numeric Key Customize Function
- 2. Select "ANALOG OUTPUT".
 - The output port number and the output voltage value are displayed in the "ALLOCATION CONTENT".

DATA	EDIT DISPLAY	UTILITY	12 🗹 🖬 🏶 🗟 寻 👌	
EX. MEMORY	KEY ALLOCATION APPLI.NO.:1 KEY FUNCTION	(SIM) N AL	LOCATION CONTENT	
DISPLAY SETUP	- IALTERNATI MOMENTAR 0 PULSE 1 4BIT OUT 2 MAALOG 0 3 MAKER 4 MAKER 6 MAKER 6 MAKER 7 MAKER 8 MAKER 9 MAKER	NO. Y NO. NO. PUT NO. T	1 1 1 TIME 0.01 sec 1 OUT 0 1 OUT 0.00	
Main Menu	Simple Menu			

- (1) To change the output port No. or output voltage value, move the cursor to the No. or voltage value and press [SELECT]. Then numeric value can be entered.
- (2) Input the number or voltage value to be changed, and press [ENTER]
- 8.15.3.10 Analog Incremental Output Allocation

Set this function in the KEY ALLOCATION (SIM) window.

- 1. Move the cursor to the "FUNCTION" of the key to be allocated and press [SELECT].
 - A selection list appears.
- 2. Select "ANALOG INC OUTPUT."
 - The output port No. and incremental value are displayed in the "ALLOCATION CONTENT".

DATA	DIT 🛛 DISPLAY 🗍 UTILITY 🗍 🎲 🗹 🕼 🕼 🕞 🙌
EX. MEMORY PARAMETER PARAMETER EEUP E DISPLAY SETUP C A	KEY ALLOCATION(SIM) APPLI.NO.:1 ALLOCATION CONTENT - ALLERNATE NO. 1 - MALTERNATY NO. 1 0 PULSE NO. 1 1 MOMENTARY NO. 1 0 PULSE NO. 1 TIME 1 ABIT OUTPUT NO. 1 OUT 0 2 ANALOG OUT NO. 1 OUT 0.000 3 3 ANALOG INC NO. 1 INC 1.000 4 4 MAKER 5 MAKER 5 MAKER 9 9 MAKER 9 MAKER 5 NAKER 5
Main Menu	Simple Menu

- To change the output port No. or incremental value, move the cursor to the No. or incremental value and press [SELECT]. Then numeric values can be entered.
- (2) Input the number or incremental value to be changed, and press [ENTER].

- 8 System Setup
- 8.15 Numeric Key Customize Function

8.15.4 Allocation of I/O Control Instructions

In key allocation (SIM), output control instructions can be allocated to the numeric keys that have been allocated one of the following I/O controls with key allocation (EACH).

Function	Output Control Instruction allowed to be Allocated
Alternate output allocation	DOUT OT# (No.) ON
Momentary output allocation	
Pulse output allocation	PULSE OT# (No.) T = output time
Group output allocation (4-bit)	DOUT OGH (No.) output value
Group output allocation (8-bit)	DOUT OG# (No.) output value
Analog output allocation	AOUT AO# (No.) output voltage value

- 1. Allocation of I/O control instruction.
 - Allocate the I/O control instruction with key allocation (SIM) following the forementioned procedure.

DATA	EDIT	DISPLAY	UTILITY	12 🗹 📶 👒 🔟	🚽 (†)
EX. MEMOR	V KEY A APF KEV 0 1 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	LLOCATION(LI.NO.:1 / FUNCTION ALTERNATE MOMENTARY PULSE 4BITOUTP ANALOG OU ANALOG OU ANALOG OU ANALOG OU MAKER MAKER MAKER MAKER MAKER	ALL NO. [NO. [NO. [NO. [NO. [T NO. [C NO. [LOCATION CONTENT	
Main Menu	Simp	le Menu			

2. Move the cursor to the "FUNCTION" of the key that has been allocated with I/O control with key allocation (SIM) and press [SELECT].

DATA E	DIT 🛛 DISPLAY 🖉 UTILITY 🗍 🕼 🗹 🖄 🔞 🗔 📮 🕀
EX. MEMORY PARAMETER PARAMETER SETUP B DISPLAY SETUP A A	KEY ALLOCATION(EACH) APPLI.NO.:1 KEY FUNCTION JOB CALL TI 0 DISPLAY PRESENT POINT 1 MAKER 0 MAKER 9 MAKER
Main Menu	Simple Menu

- Selection list appears.

3. Select "OUTPUT CONTROL INST".

- 8 System Setup
- 8.15 Numeric Key Customize Function
 - The instruction corresponding to the I/O control allocated by key allocation (SIM) is displayed in the "ALLOCATION CONTENT".

DATA	EDIT DISPLAY	UTILITY	12 🗳 🖌	🖇 🔟 🖵 🛉)
EX. MEMORY PARAMETER SETUP DISPLAY SETUP	KEY ALLOCATION APPLI.NO.:1 KEY FUNCTIO JUB CALL O DISPLAY 1 INSTRUCT 2 MAKER 3 MAKER 3 MAKER 4 MAKER 5 MAKER 5 MAKER 6 MAKER 7 MAKER 8 MAKER 9 MAKER	(EACH) N ALL ION WAIT I PRESE ION DOUT	.ocation conte	VT]	
Main Menu	Simple Menu				

 The allocated instruction changes automatically when "ALLOCATION CONTENT" is changed by key allocation (SIM).
 Even if the I/O control allocation is changed to the default setting allocated by the manufacturer with key allocation (SIM), the settings for key allocation (EACH) remain the same.

8.15.5 Execution of Allocation

- 8.15.5.1 Executing the Instruction/Output Control Allocation
 - 1. Press the key allocated for instruction allocation or output control allocation.
 - The allocated instruction is displayed in the input buffer line.

WALL IN#(1)=0N

- 2. Press [INSERT] and [ENTER].
 - The instruction displayed in the input buffer line is registered.

CALL JOB: ARCON

- 8.15.5.2 Executing the Job Call Allocation
 - 1. Press the key allocated for the job call allocation.
 - The CALL instruction is displayed in the input buffer line.
 - 2. Press [INSERT] then [ENTER].
 - The CALL instruction shown in the input buffer line is registered.
- 8.15.5.3 Executing the Display Allocation
 - 1. Press the key allocated for the display allocation.
 - The allocated display appears.
- 8.15.5.4 Executing the I/O Control Allocation

Alternate output allocation, momentary output allocation, pulse output allocation, group output allocation (4-bit/8-bit), analog output allocation,

DX100

- 8 System Setup
- 8.15 Numeric Key Customize Function

analog incremental output allocation are executed by the following operation.

- 1. Press [INTERLOCK] and the key allocated for I/O control allocation at the same time.
 - Allocated functions are executed.

- 8 System Setup
- 8.16 Changing the Output Status

8.16 Changing the Output Status

The status of external output signals can be changed from the programming pendant by using either of the following two methods.

- On the user output status window
- On the RELAY ON window

The method that uses the RELAY ON window, which is described here, simplifies the operation for changing the status of signals that are used frequently.



A maximum of 64 output signals can be shown on the RELAY ON window and they must be set in advance to parameters S4C327 to S4C390. If they are not set, the sub menu in the RELAY ON window will not be displayed.

- 1. Select {IN/OUT} under the main menu.
- 2. Select {RELAY ON}.
 - The RELAY ON window appears.

DATA	EDIT DISPLA		12 🖻 📶 👒 🕅	3 🖵 (h
JOB ARC WELDING VARIABLE BOOT IN/OUT IN/OUT IN/OUT SYSTEM INFO SYSTEM INFO	RELAY ON OUT#0010 OUT#0012 OUT#0014 OUT#0014 OUT#0016 OUT#0018 OUT#0015 OUT#0017 OUT#0019	STATUS N O O O O O O O O O O O O O		
Main Menu	Simple Menu			

- 3. Select the desired signal to change the output status.
 - Select the status (● or O) of the desired signal.
- 4. Press [INTERLOCK] +[SELECT].
 - The output status is changed. (•: status ON; O: status OFF.)

DATA	EDIT	DISPLAY	UT	TLITY	12 🖻	1 🐝 🔟	📮 🕀	
ARC WELDING	RELAN OUTPU OUT#C OUT#C OUT#C OUT#C	ON JT NO. ST J010 C J012 C J014 C J016 C J018 C J015 C J017 C J019 C	ATUS		ME			
Main Menu	Simp	le Menu						

8.16 Changing the Output Status



It is also possible to turn the relevant external output signal on only for the duration that [INTERLOCK]+[SELECT] are pressed. This selection is made in advance by setting the parameters (S4C391 to 454) to "1".
- 8 System Setup
- 8.17 Changing the Parameter Setting

8.17 Changing the Parameter Setting

The parameter settings can be changed only by the operator who has the correct user ID number for the management mode.

- 1. Select {PARAMETER} under the main menu.
- 2. Select the parameter type.
 - The PARAMETER window appears. Select the desired parameter.



3. Move the cursor to the desired parameter number.

DATA	EDIT	DISPLAY	UTILITY	12	2 🖌	1	📮 🕀	
EX. HENORY PARAMETER PARAMETER SETUP B DISPLAY SETUP A A	PARAME \$20000 \$200000 \$20000000 \$200000 \$2000000000 \$20000000000	TER 00 1 01 1 02 1 03 1 04 1 055 1 066 1 077 1 08 1 09 1 11 1 12 1 13 1 14 1	0 0000_0000 0 0000_0000 0 0000_0000 0 0000_0000 0 0000_0000 0 0000_0000 0 0000_0000 0 0000_0000 0 0000_0000 0 0000_0000 0 0000_0000 0 0000_0000 0 0000_0000 0 0000_0000 0 0000_0000 0 0000_0000 0 0000_0000 0 0000_0000 0 0000_0000					
Main Menu	Simpl	e Menu						

 When the desired parameter number is not in the current window, move the cursor in the following way: 8 System Setup

8.17 Changing the Parameter Setting

(1) Move the cursor to a parameter number and press [SELECT].

DATA	EDIT	DISPLAY	UTILITY	12	2 🖌	1] 🖳 🕀)
EX. MEMORY PARAMETER PARAMETER SETUP G DISPLAY SETU C G A	PARAI 320000 320000 320000 32000 320000 320000 320000000000	Etcr to 1 002 0 003 0 004 0 005 0 006 0 007 0 008 0 011 11 112 113 113 114 115 115	1000_0000 1000_0000 0000_0000 0000_0000 0000_0000 0000_0000 0000_0000 0000_0000 0000_0000 0000_0000 0000_0000 0000_0000 0000_0000 0000_0000 0000_0000 0000_0000					
Main Menu	Simp	le Menu						

(2) Enter the desired parameter number with the numeric keys.

DATA	DIT DISP	LAY	UTILITY	12	2 🖌	1	📑 🖗	
EX. MEMORY PARAMETER PARAMETER SETUP M DISPLAY SETUP	PARAMETER Jump to S2C0002 S2C0003 S2C0004 S2C0005 S2C0006 S2C0007 S2C0007 S2C0008 S2C0007 S2C0008 S2C0009 S2C0010 S2C0011 S2C0014 S2C0014 S2C0014	123 0 1 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0	000_0000 0000_0000 0000_0000 0000_0000 0000_0000 0000_0000 0000_0000 0000_0000 0000_0000 0000_0000 0000_0000 0000_0000 0000_0000 0000_0000 0000_0000					
Main Menu	Simple Menu	Γ						

- (3) Press [ENTER].
- (4) The cursor moves to the selected parameter number.

DATA	EDIT	DISPLAY	UTILITY	12 🖻 🖌	📢 🔯 🕻	a 🖗
EX. MEMOR PARAMETER EEST SETUP DISPLAY SET FAA	PARA! \$200	AETER 108 0 109 0 101 0 111 0 112 0 113 0 114 0 115 0 116 0 117 0 120 0 121 0 221 0 223 0	0000_0000 0000_0000 0000_0000 0000_0000 0000_0000 0000_0000 0000_0000 0000_0000 0000_0000 0000_0000 0000_0000 0000_0000 0000_0000 0000_0000			
Main Menu	Simp	le Menu				

- 8 System Setup
- 8.17 Changing the Parameter Setting

Set the parameters in the following manner.

- 1. Select the parameter data to be set.
 - (1) Move the cursor to the parameter number data (decimal or binary) in the PARAMETER window, and press [SELECT].
 - (2) To enter a decimal setting, select the decimal figure.
 - (3) To enter a binary setting, select the binary figure.



- 2. Enter the value.
 - If a decimal figure is selected, enter a decimal value with the numeric keys.



- If a binary figure is selected, move the cursor to the binary figure data in the input buffer line, and press [SELECT].
- Each time [SELECT] is pressed, "0" and "1" alternate in the window.
- "0" or "1" can also be entered with the numeric keys.

	S2C0055	64	0100000		
--	---------	----	---------	--	--

- 3. Press [ENTER].
 - The new setting appears in the position where the cursor is located.

DATA	EDIT	DISPLAY	UTILITY	12 🗈	l 📶 👒	10	a 🖗
EX. MEMORY PARAMETER SETUP DISPLAY SETUP	PARAME S2C005 S2C005 S2C005 S2C006 S2C006 S2C006 S2C006 S2C006 S2C006 S2C006 S2C006 S2C006 S2C006 S2C006 S2C006 S2C006 S2C006 S2C006 S2C006 S2C007 S2C007 S2C007 S2C007 S2C007 S2C007 S2C007 S2C007 S2C007 S2C007 S2C007 S2C007 S2C007 S2C007 S2C	TER 128 6 6 128 66 9 0 0 1 0 2 0 1 0 2 0 3 0 4 0 5 0 6 0 0 7 0 8 0 9 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 1 1 0 1 1 0 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1<	1000_0000 0100_0011 0100_0010 0000_0000				
Main Menu	Simple	e Menu					

- 8 System Setup
- 8.18 File Initialization

8.18 File Initialization

8.18.1 Initializing Job File

- 1. Turn ON the power supply again while pressing [MAIN MENU] simultaneously.
- 2. Change the security mode to the management mode.
- 3. Select {FILE} under the main menu.
- 4. Select {INITIALIZE}.
 - The INITIALIZE window appears.

			1	
FILE FILE EX. MEMORY DISPLAY SETUP	INITIALIZE	DATA		
Main Menu	Simple Menu	Maintenance mo	ode	

- 5. Select {JOB}.
 - A confirmation dialog box appears.



- 6. Select {YES}.
 - The job data is initialized.

- 8 System Setup
- 8.18 File Initialization

8.18.2 Initializing Data File

- 1. Turn ON the power supply again while pressing [MAIN MENU] simultaneously.
- 2. Change the security mode to the management mode.
- 3. Select {FILE} under the main menu.
- 4. Select {INITIALIZE}.
- 5. Select {FILE/GENERAL DATA}.
 - The INITIALIZE window appears.

SYSTEM FILE EX. MEMORY EX. MEMORY DISPLAY SETUP CA	INITIALIZE I TOOL DATA TOOL OND WEAVING DATA WEAV USER CORDINATE DATA UFRAME VARIABLE DATA VAR ARC START COND DATA ARCSRT ARC END COND DATA ARCSP ARC AUXILIARY COND DATA ARCSP VARIABLE COND DATA ARCSP ARC END COND DATA ARCSP ARC START COND DATA ARCSP ARC START COND DATA ARCSP ARC AUXILIARY COND DATA ARCSP VAR DAT SHOCK DEFF WELDER COND DATA WELDER USR DEF WELDER COND DATA WELDUDEF.DAT SHOCK DETECTION LEVEL SHOCKLVL.CND INTERFERENCE AREA DATA CUBEINTF.CND
Main Menu	Simple Menu Maintenance mode

- 6. Select the data file to be initialized.
 - The selected data file/general data are marked with "★".
 - The parameters marked with "■" cannot be selected.

SYSTEM FILE EX. MEMORY EX. MEMORY DISPLAY SETUP CA	INITIALIZE ★TOOL DATA TOOL .CND WEAVING DATA WEAV .CND USE CORDINATE DATA UFRAME .CND ★VARIABLE DATA UFRAME .CND ★RC START COND DATA ARCSRT .CND ARC END COND DATA ARCSUP .DAT ARC AUXILIARY COND DATA ARCSUP .DAT POWER SOURCE COND. DATA WELDER .DAT USR DEF WELDER COND DATA WELDUEF. DAT .DAT SHOCK DETECTION LEVEL SHOCKLVL.CND .INTERFERENCE AREA DATA CUBEINTF.CND
Main Menu	Simple Menu Maintenance mode

- 8 System Setup
- 8.18 File Initialization
- 7. Press [ENTER].
 - A confirmation dialog box appears.

			R	3	
FILE EX. MEMORY DISPLAY SETUP	INITIALIZE	TA INATE DATA ATA Initialize?	TOOL .C WEAV .C UFRAME .C VAR .E	CND CND CND DAT	
Main Menu	Simple Menu	Maintenance mo	ode		

- 8. Select {YES}.
 - The selected data file/general data are initialized.

8.18.3 Initializing Parameter File

- 1. Turn ON the power supply again while pressing [MAIN MENU] simultaneously.
- 2. Change the security mode to the management mode.
- 3. Select {FILE} under the main menu.
- 4. Select {INITIALIZE}.
- 5. Select {PARAMETER}.
 - The parameter selection window appears.

		Ø
FILE FILE EX. MEMORY DISPLAY SETUP	INITIALIZE	RC .PRM SD .PRM RO .PRM SC .PRM FD .PRM AP .PRM RS .PRM SV .PRM SVM .PRM SVM .PRM SVP .PRM SVS .PRM
Main Menu	Simple Menu Maintenance	mode

8 System Setup

8.18 File Initialization

- 6. Select the parameter to be initialized.
 - The selected parameter is marked with " \star ".
 - The parameters marked with "■" cannot be selected.

		Ø	
FILE EX. MEMORY DISPLAY SETUP	INITIALIZE ROBOT MATCH PRMTR SYS DEF PRMTR COORD ORG PRMTR SYS MATCH PRMTR CIO PRMTR CIO PRMTR FCTN DEF PRMTR APPLI PRMTR FTANSMISSION(UNIV) SENSOR PRMTR SERVOPMTR SERVOPMTR SERVOPMTR SERVOPMTR MOTION CTRL PRMTR MOTION FUNC PRMTR MOTION FUNC PRMTR SERVOPACK PRMTR	RC .PRM SD .PRM RO .PRM CIO .PRM FD .PRM AP .PRM RS .PRM SE .PRM SV .PRM SV .PRM SVP .PRM SVP .PRM SVP .PRM SVP .PRM SVS .PRM	
Main Menu	Simple Menu Maintenance	e mode	

- 7. Press [ENTER].
 - A confirmation dialog box appears.



- 8. Select {YES}.
 - The selected parameter is initialized.

8.18.4 Initializing I/O Data

- 1. Turn ON the power supply again while pressing [MAIN MENU] simultaneously.
- 2. Change the security mode to the management mode.
- 3. Select {FILE} under the main menu.
- 4. Select {INITIALIZE}.
- 5. Select {I/O DATA}.

- 8 System Setup
- 8.18 File Initialization
 - The I/O data selection window appears.

SYSTEM FILE EX. MEMORY STORY DISPLAY SETUP	INITIALIZE B.10 PRGM CIOPRG IO NAME DATA IONAME SIMULATED IN DATA PSEUDOIN.DAT EXTERNAL IO NAME DATA EXIONAME.DAT REGISTER NAME DATA IOMNAME IONNAME DATA IOMNAME
Main Menu	Simple Menu Maintenance mode

- 6. Select data to be initialized.
 - The selected data is marked with "★".
 - The I/O data marked with "■" cannot be selected.



- 7. Press [ENTER].
 - A confirmation dialog box appears.

	Ø
SYSTEM FILE	INITIALIZE →2.10 PRGM CIOPRG LIST IO NAME DATA IONAME .DAT SIMULATED IN DATA PSEUDOIN.DAT EXTERNAL IO NAME DATA EXIONAME.DAT
	Initialize? YES NO
Main Menu	Simple Menu Maintenance mode

- 8. Select {YES}.
 - The selected data is initialized.

- 8 System Setup
- 8.18 File Initialization

8.18.5 Initializing System Data

- 1. Turn ON the power supply again while pressing [MAIN MENU] simultaneously.
- 2. Change the security mode to the management mode.
- 3. Select {FILE} under the main menu.
- 4. Select {INITIALIZE}.
- 5. Select {SYSTEM DATA}.
 - The system data selection window appears.

SYSTEM FILE EX. MEMORY EX. MEMORY DISPLAY SETUP CAR	INITIALIZE USER WORD WORD DAT SV MONITOR SIGNAL SVMON DAT VARIABLE NAME VARNAME DAT SECOND HOME POSITION HOME2 DAT HOME POS CALIB DATA ABSO DAT OPERATION ORG POS DATA OPEROG DAT I/O MESSAGE HISTORY DATA IOMSGHST.DAT ARC MONITOR DATA ARCMON DAT EXTERNAL IO ALLOC DATA EIOALLOC.DAT
Main Menu	Simple Menu Maintenance mode

- 6. Select the parameter to be initialized.
 - The selected data is marked with " \star ".
 - The system data marked with "■" cannot be selected

SYSTEM PILE FILE EX. MEMORY STUP DISPLAY SETUP A	INITIALIZE →JSER WORD UWORD .DAT SV MONITOR SIGNAL SVMON .DAT VARIABLE NAME VARNAME .DAT SECOND HOME POSITION HOME2 .DAT HOME POS CALIB DATA ABSO .DAT OPERATION ORG POS DATA OPEORG .DAT I/O MESSAGE HISTORY DATA IOMSGHST.DAT ARC MONITOR DATA ARCMON EXTERNAL IO ALLOC DATA EIOALLOC.DAT
Main Menu	Simple Menu Maintenance mode

- 8 System Setup8.18 File Initialization
- 7. Press [ENTER].
 - A confirmation dialog box appears.

	li l
SYSTEM	
FILE	→ USER WORD UNORD .DAT □ SV MONITOR SIGNAL SVMON .DAT □ VARIABLE NAME VARNAME .DAT □ SECOND HOME POSITION HOME2 .DAT
EX. MEMORY	Initialize?
DISPLAY SETUP	YES NO
Main Menu	Simple Menu Maintenance mode

- 8. Select {YES}.
 - The selected data is initialized.

8 System Setup

8.19 Display Setting Function

8.19 Display Setting Function

8.19.1 Font Size Setting

DX100 enables changing the font size displayed on the screen.

The fonts displayed on the screen can be selected from eight patterns of fonts in the font size setting dialog box.

8.19.1.1 Applicable Range for the Font Size Change

Changing the font size is allowed in the general display area indicated in the following figure:

				Ger	eral displa	ay area	
JOB	EDIT	DISPLAY	UTILITY	12 🖸	<mark>11</mark> 🐝 🖻	🕞 🕀 🛓	
EX. MEMOR	Y JOB J:WOI CONT 00000 0001 0002 0003 0004	CONTENT RK1 NOP MOVJ PO00 MOVJ PO00 WAIT IN#(1 END	R1 VJ=50.00 VJ=50.00 0)=0N		S:0000 TOOL: **		
	MOV	J VJ=0.78					
Main Menu	. Simp	le Menu					

8.19.1.2 Settable Font Size

The following eight patterns of fonts are available in setting the size of fonts displayed on the screen.

	Font Size	Font Style
1	Small	Regular
2	Small	Bold
3	Regular	Regular
4	Regular	Bold
5	Large	Regular
6	Large	Bold
7	Extra large	Regular
8	Extra large	Bold

8.19.1.3 Setting the Font Size

To set the font size, first off display the font size setting dialog box as follows.

DX100

- 8 System Setup
- 8.19 Display Setting Function
- 1. Select {DISPLAY SETUP} then {CHANGE FONT} under the main menu.



2. The font size setting dialog box appears on the center of the current window.

JOB	EDIT	DISPLAY	UTILITY	12 🗳	l 📶 🧐 🕅 I	🤰 🙌
EX. MEMORY	JOB C J:WOR	ONTENT K1	D1		S:0000	
SETUP	Please	select for	nt size.		_	
			ABC			
-	□ Bold	Туре				
	AB	С	ABC	ABC	ABC	
		OK		C	ancel	
Main Menu	Simp	le Menu				

- To set the font size in the font size setting dialog box, follow the procedure below.
 - 1. Specify the font style.
 - The {Bold Type} check box can be checked or unchecked alternately each time the check box is selected.
 - Check the {Bold Type} check box as follows to set the font to the bold style.

▼ Bold Type	AI	30	
	1		

- 8 System Setup
- 8.19 Display Setting Function
 - Clear the {Bold Type} check box as follows to set the font to the regular style.

Please select font size.					
		ABC			
🗖 Bold Type					
ABC	ABC	ABC	ABC		
C	К	Cano	cel		

- 2. Specify the font size.
 - Select a button from the four buttons in the dialog box.

JOB	EDIT	PLAY UTILIT	r 🛛 12 🖻	M 🕫 🔟	🕞 🙌	
EX. MEMOR	JOB CONTEN	T OUD. D1		S:0000		
SETUP	Please selec	t font size.		_		
DISPLAY SET	ABC					
	🗹 Bold Type					
	ABC	ABC	ABC	ABC		
		Ж	Car	ncel		
Main Menu	Simple Menu					

3. The font size setting dialog box is closed, and the screen displays the font specified in the dialog box.

JOB	DIT DISPLAY	UTILITY	12 🗷 📶 🕫) 🚾 🖵 🙌
EX. MEMORY EXEMP E DISPLAY SETUP C C C C C	JOB CONTEN J: WORK1 CONTROL GF 0000 NOP 0001 MOYJ 0002 MOYJ 0003 WAIT 0004 END	NT ROUP: R1 POOO VJ=8 POOO VJ=8 IN#(10)=0	50.00 50.00 N	S:0000 TOOL: **
	MOVJ VJ=	0.78]
Main Menu	Simple Menu			

8 System Setup

- 8.19 Display Setting Function
- To cancel the setting of the font size, follow the procedure below.1. Select {Cancel} in the font size setting dialog box.



2. The dialog box closes without changing the font size.





Do not turn OFF the DX100 power supply when the font size is being changed (when the font size setting dialog box is on the screen).

- 8 System Setup
- DX100 8.19 Display Setting Function

8.19.2 Operation Button Size Setting

DX100 enables changing the size of operation buttons.

The button size in the main menu area, menu area, and instruction list can be respectively selected from three sizes.

8.19.2.1 Applicable Range for the Button Size Change

Changing the button size is allowed in the main menu, menu (pull-down menu), and instruction list indicated in the following figure:



8.19.2.2 Settable Button Size

The following three sizes of buttons are available in setting the size of each operation button; the font style of the character string on buttons can also be specified.

	Button Size	Font Style
1	Small	Regular
		Bold
2	Regular	Regular
		Bold
3	Large	Regular
		Bold

8.19.2.3 Setting the Button Size

To set the button size, first off display the button size setting dialog box as follows.

- 8 System Setup
- 8.19 Display Setting Function
- 1. Select {DISPLAY SETUP} then {CHANGE BUTTON} under the main menu.



 The font size setting dialog box appears on the center of the current window.



- To set the button size in the button size setting dialog box, follow the procedure below.
 - 1. Specify the area to set the button size.
 - (1) Select the desired area from the area setting buttons.
 - (2) The buttons in the selected area is subject to size setting.
 - (3) Note that only the last-selected button determines the area subject to size setting, even if settings are performed several times before then.



- 2. Specify the font style.
 - The {Bold Type} check box can be checked or unchecked alternately each time the check box is selected.

- 8 System Setup
- 8.19 Display Setting Function
 - Check the {Bold Type} check box as follows to set the font to the bold style.



• Clear the {Bold Type} check box as follows to set the font to the regular style.

NxPp			×
Please select	button size.		Cancel
MainMenu	PulldownMenu	InstList	1
🗆 Bold Type	ABCDE	ABCDE	ABCDE

- 3. Specify the button size.
 - Select a button from the three buttons in the dialog box.

JOB	EDIT	DISPLAY UTILIT	12 🗹 🗤	8 🔟 🖵 🙌			
UDB CONTENT J:WORK1 CONTROL GROUP: R1			S:00 TOOL:	00 **			
SETUP NxPp	SETUP 0000 NOP 0001 MOV.J P000 V.J=50.00 NXPP X						
Pleas	Please select button size.						
Ma	MainMenu PulldownMenu		InstList				
⊠ Bol	I Bold Type ABCDE		ABCDE	ABCDE			
	MOVJ	VJ=0.78					
Main Menu	Simple	Menu					

4. The font size setting dialog box is closed, and the screen displays the buttons specified in the dialog box.

- 8 System Setup
- 8.19 Display Setting Function
 - The modification is applied only to the buttons in the area selected with the area setting button. (In this example, the change is applied only to the pull-down menu buttons in the menu area.)



To cancel the setting of the button size, follow the procedure below.
 Select {Cancel} in the button size setting dialog box.

JOB	E E	DIT	DISPLAY	UTILITY	12	2 🖌 🖲	8 10	🕒 🕀	
EX. MEMORY UNIX			S:0002 TOOL: **						
	NxPp XJ 2000 NdF								
	Please	e select	button	size.		1	Ca	ancel	
	MainMenu PulldownMe		wnMenu	Inst	tList				
I Bold Type		ABC	DE	AB	CDE	A	BCDE		
		(MOVJ	/J=0.78						
Main I	Menu	Simple	Menu						

- The dialog box closes without changing the button size.

JOB	EDIT	DISPLAY	UTILITY	12 🖻 🖞	1 😣 🖻	📮 🙌
EX. MEMOR SETUP M DISPLAY SET A3	Y JOB J: WO CONT 0000 0001 0002 0002 0002 0002 0004	CONTENT RK1 ROL GROUP: NOP MOVJ POOO MOVJ POOO WAIT IN#(1 END	R1 VJ=50.00 VJ=50.00 0)=0N	Т	S:0000 OOL: **	
	MOV	/J VJ=0.78				
Main Menu	Simp	ole Menu				

8 System Setup8.19 Display Setting Function



Do not turn OFF the DX100 power supply when the button size is being changed (when the button size setting dialog box is on the screen, or when an hourglass is indicated in the middle of the screen).

8.19.3 Initialization of Screen Layout

The font/button size changed with the font/button size setting function can be collectively changed back to the regular size.

8.19.3.1 Initializing the Screen Layout

To initialize the screen layout, follow the procedure below.

1. Select {DISPLAY SETUP} then {INITIALIZE LAYOUT} under the main menu.

JOB	EDIT	PLAY UTILITY	12 🗷 📶 🤫) 🔟 🖵 🤚
EX. MEMORY	JOB CON J: WORK1 CONTROL	TENT GROUP: R1		S:0000 TOOL: **
DISPLAY SETU		0 VJ=5 0 VJ=5 0 VJ=5 (10)=0	i0.00 i0.00	
	CHANGE I		лч	
	CHANGE PATTER	#INDOW		
Main Menu	Simple Menu			

 A confirmation dialog box appears on the center of the current window.

JOB	EDIT	DISPLAY	UTILITY	12 🗷 📶 🭕) 🔟 🖵 🙌
EX. MEMORY	JOE J:\ COM	3 CONTEN YORK1 NTROL GR	T DUP: R1		S:0000 TOOL: **
DISPLAY SETU	P The	Screen la	vout is ch	anged into sta	ndard
		OK Cancel			
	M	DVJ VJ=0	. 78]
Main Menu	Simp	ole Menu			

- 8 System Setup
- 8.19 Display Setting Function
- To Initialize the screen layout, follow the procedure below.

1. select {OK}.

JOB	EDIT	DISPLAY	UTILITY	12 🗳	M 🕫 🔟	📮 🖨	
EX. MEMORY	JOB J:\ CON 000	Conten Ork 1 Trol Gr <mark>0</mark> Nop	T OUP: R1			S:0000 TOOL: **	
DISPLAY SETUP	The s	The screen layout is changed into standard					
	M)VJ VJ=().78]	
Main Menu	Simp	le Menu					

- The dialog box is closed, and the font/button sizes are collectively changed to the regular size.



To cancel the Initialized screen layout, follow the procedure below.
 Select {CANCEL}.

JOB	EDIT DISPL	AY UTILITY	12 🗹 🛥 😒 🗃 🕞 🙌		
EX. MEMORY	JOB CONT J:WORK1 CONTROL	ENT GROUP: R1	S:0000 TOOL: **		
DISPLAY SETUP	The screen layout is changed into standard				
		0K Cancel			
	MOVJ VJ	=0.78			
Main Menu	Simple Menu				

- 8 System Setup
- 8.19 Display Setting Function
 - The dialog box closes without changing the current screen layout.

JOB	E	DIT	DISPLAY	UTILITY	12 🗷 🖬 🕯	8 🔟 🖵 🙌	
EX. MEMOR SETUP DISPLAY SET	rup	J:WORK1 CONTROL GROUP: R1 0000 NOP 0001 MOVJ P000 VJ= 0002 MOVJ P000 VJ= 0003 WAIT IN#(10)= 0004 END			50.00 50.00 N	S:0000 TOOL: **	
		MOVJ VJ=0.78					
Main Menu	J	Simp	le Menu				



Do not turn OFF the DX100 power supply when the screen layout is being initialized (when the confirmation dialog box is on the screen, or when an hourglass is indicated in the middle of the screen).

8.19.4 Layout Storage

The settings of the font or button sizes are saved in the programming pendant. The screen displays the font/button size specified last time with the current programming pendant.

9 System Backup

9.1 System Backup with DX100

9 System Backup

For the DX100, the system data can be collectively backed up in advance so that the data can be immediately loaded and restored in case of an unexpected trouble such as data loss.

9.1 System Backup with DX100

For the DX100, four types of collective backup are available: CMOS.BIN, CMOSBK.BIN, ALCMSxx.HEX, and CMOSxx.HEX.

9.1.1 Function Types of Data

9.1.1.1 CMOS.BIN

For the normal backup, use this data.

Save: Perform in the maintenance mode (the editing mode or higher.)

Load: Perform in the maintenance mode (the management mode.)

As for the load/save procedures, refer to *chapter 9.2 "Backup by CMOS.BIN" at page 9-3.*

Target Area: All areas of the internally stored data. (Note that the monitoring time is not loaded.)

9.1.1.2 CMOSBK.BIN

This data is used in the automatic backup function.

Save: Saves with the preset conditions in the normal mode.

- Load: Perform for the system restoration in the maintenance mode (the management mode.)
- For details, refer to chapter 9.5 "Error List" at page 9-20.

Target Area: All areas of the internally stored data. (Note that the monitoring time is not loaded.)

9.1.1.3 CMOSxx.HEX

This data is loaded/saved in the FD/CF menu in the normal mode.

Save: Perform in the normal mode (the editing mode or higher.)

Load: Perform in the normal mode (the management mode.)

For details, refer to "DX100 OPERATOR'S MANUAL."

Target Area: The collected data including "Job File," "Data File," "Parameter File," "System Data," and "I/O Data" which can be individually loaded/saved in the FD/CF menu. Because the setting information of robot etc. are not included in this collected data, the system cannot be completely restored.

9.1.1.4 ALCMSxx.HEX

This data is for the manufacturer only. Users can save but cannot load this data.

- 9 System Backup
- 9.1 System Backup with DX100

9.1.2 Device

For the backup of the DX100 system, the CompactFlash can be used. The following tables show the recommended CompactFlash.

<Recommended CompactFlash>

No.	Manufacturer	Model	Remarks
1	Hagiwara Sys-Com	MCF10P-256MS-YE2	(256MB)
2	Hagiwara Sys-Com	MCF10P-512MS	(512MB)
3	Hagiwara Sys-Com	MCF10P-A01GS	(1GB)
4	Hagiwara Sys-Com	MCF10P-A02GS	(2GB)
5	SiliconSystems, Inc.	SSD-C25M3512	(2GB)

< Recommended USB Memory>

No.	Manufacturer	Model	Remarks
1	Hagiwara Sys-Com	UDG3-GA series	(1GB, 2GB)

In order to save the batch data, the following free space per file is needed in the media.

JZNC-NIF01-1:	18 MByte
JZNC-NIF01-2:	21 MByte
JZNC-NIF01-3:	21 MByte

Note that the free space for one working file is needed in addition to the free space for the stored files when using the automatic backup function.

Also, it is recommended to store the backup data in two or more media cards to minimize problems if the media is damaged.

The water-proof function of the Pendant is not effective while the USB memory is connected.

If USB memory is connected constantly, there is a risk it drops off.

Use CompactFlash if there is no measures to maintain water-proof function or to prevent USB memory from dropping off.

9 System Backup

9.2 Backup by CMOS.BIN

9.2 Backup by CMOS.BIN

Perform the backup by CMOS.BIN in the maintenance mode. The chart below shows the availability of CMOS save/CMOS load in each security mode in the maintenance mode.

Security	CMOS Save	CMOS Load
Operation Mode	Х	Х
Editing Mode	0	Х
Management Mode	0	0
Yaskawa Mode	0	0

9.2.1 CMOS.BIN Save

Follow the procedures below to save CMOS.BIN.

- 1. Turn ON the DX100 power supply while pressing [MAIN MENU].
- Insert a CompactFlash into the CompactFlash slot on the programming pendant.
 - when USB memory is used instead of CompactFlash, mount the USB memory and select {DEVICE} → "USB: PENDANT"
- 3. Select {FD/PC CARD} under the main menu.
 - The sub menu appears.

		l l l l l l l l l l l l l l l l l l l
SYSTEM FILE	SECURITY MODE	
EX. MEMORY	LOAD	
DISPLAY SETUP	SAVE	
	SYSTEM RESTOR	RE
	DEVICE	
	FOLDER	
Main Menu	Simple Menu	Maintenance mode

4. Select {SAVE}.

- 9 System Backup
- 9.2 Backup by CMOS.BIN

The save display appears.

			1	
FILE FILE EX. MEMORY DISPLAY SETUP	SAVE	IG DATA		
Main Menu	Simple Menu	Maintenance mo	ode	

The items marked with "■" cannot be selected. 5. Select {CMOS SAVE}.

The confirmation dialog box appears.

		<i>B</i>
SYSTEM FILE	SAVE	TA
EX. MEMORY	YES	Save?
Main Menu	Simple Menu	Maintenance mode

- 6. Select {YES}.
 - Select {YES} to save the CMOS data into the CompactFlash.
 - When saving the file, if the CMOS.BIN file already exists in the CompactFlash, the following confirmation dialog box appears.

	Ø
SYSTEM PILE FILE	SAVE
EX. MEMORY DISPLAY SETUP Aa	Overwrite file? CMOS.BIN YES NO
Main Menu	Simple Menu Maintenance mode

9 System Backup

9.2 Backup by CMOS.BIN

- 7. Select {YES}.
 - The CMOS.BIN file is overwritten in the CompactFlash.

9.2.2 CMOS.BIN Load

Follow the procedures below to load CMOS.BIN.

- 1. Turn ON the DX100 power supply while pressing [MAIN MENU].
- 2. Change the security mode to the maintenance mode, or Yaskawa mode.
- 3. Insert a CompactFlash into the CompactFlash on the programming pendant.
 - When USB memory is used instead of CompactFlash, mount USB memory and select {DEVICE} → "USB: PENDANT".
- 4. Select {FD/PC CARD} under the main menu.
 - The sub menu appears.

		Ø
SYSTEM FILE	SECURITY MODE	IANAGEMENT MODE
EX. MEMORY	LOAD	
	SAVE	
	SYSTEM RESTORE	
	DEVICE	
	FOLDER	
Main Menu	Simple Menu	Maintenance mode

5. Select {LOAD}.

The load display appears.

			C.	3
SYSTEM FILE EX. MEMORY DISPLAY SETUP CAR	LOAD CMOS SYSTEM CONFI	g data		
Main Menu	Simple Menu	Maintenan	ce mode	

– The items marked with "■" cannot be selected.

- 9 System Backup
- 9.2 Backup by CMOS.BIN
- 6. Select {CMOS LOAD}.
 - The comfirmation dialog box appears.

SYSTEM FILE	LOAD
EX. MEMORY DISPLAY SETUP	Load? FILE : 08-08-01 16:12 YES NO
Main Menu	Simple Menu Maintenance mode

- 7. Select {YES}.
 - The loaded CMOS.BIN file contents are reflected in the data inside the robot,



9 System Backup

9.3 Automatic Backup Function

9.3 Automatic Backup Function

9.3.1 Automatic Backup Function

9.3.1.1 Objective

With the automatic backup function, the data saved in the DX100 such as system setting or operational condition are collectively backed up in the CompactFlash which is inserted in the programming pendant.

In case of an unexpected trouble such as data loss, the backup data saved in the CompactFlash by the automatic backup function can be loaded to the DX100 memory to restore the file data.



The automatic backup function is enabled only while the DX100 power supply is ON whereas it isn't while in the maintenance mode or the power supply is OFF.

9.3.1.2 Outline

The automatic backup function saves the internally stored data in a single file in advance for the smooth restoration from unexpected troubles of the DX100.

The teaching operation is one of the factors that changes the internally stored data. Thus, a mode which backs up the latest data after the teaching operation is prepared. To confirm the termination of the teaching operation, check the mode key whether it is changed from teach mode to play mode.

Other than the teaching operation, the present position of the robot or the value of a variable can be pointed out as the factors to change the internally stored data. These data, however, are changed after each operation and have very little need to be retained permanently. Accordingly, backing up these data at regular interval should be well enough to operate and the mode to back up the data at regular interval is also prepared.

Furthermore, the mode to back up the data when starting up the DX100 and when inputting signals are also available for some specific versions.

With the automatic backup function, all the part where the internal data is stored in the physical memory area is collectively saved. If there is any data which is in the middle of changing while executing the automatic backup function, the data might not be usable for restoration because of its inconsistency. Therefore, the function is terminated with an error during the play back operation or while the manipulator is in motion so that the automatic backup cannot be operated. Set the automatic backup function to be executed while the manipulator is not in the playback status and while the manipulator is stopped. 9

System Backup Automatic Backup Function 9.3

The automatic backup function has the following functions and features.

No	Function/Feature	Explanation
1	Cyclic backup In the teach mode, the data in memory is backed up in a specified cycle from a specified starting time.	This function backs up as much of the latest data as possible during editing. The backup data saved in the CompactFlash can be loaded to the DX100 in case of data loss so that the damage can be minimized.
2	Backup when switching modes When switching the mode from the teach mode to the play mode, the data in memory is backed up.	The editing data is backed up when editing is completed. The latest data is automatically backed up with this mode.
3	Backup when start-up When the DX100 is start-up, the data in memory is backed up.	When the DX 100 starts up, the data in memory is backed up. Since the editing/playback operation is usually completed when the DX100 power is turned OFF, the latest data is automatically backed up with this mode.
4	Backup when inputting specified signals The data in memory is backed up when a specified signal(#40560) is input.	The data in memory is backed up by the signal from the host at the intended timing. Although the above mentioned items 1 to 3 are designed to back up the data automatically, this function backs up the data in accordance with the instruction from the host.
5	Backup while robot program is stopped The backup during playback is disabled. However, in the play mode, the backup is enabled if the robot is stopped. ("Cyclic backup" and "Backup when inputting specified signals")	Backs up the variables for essential data.
6	Backup and retry at low priority The data in memory is backed up at low priority so that this operation does not affect the other operations. When other operations affect the backup operation, the backup is suspended and retried later.	The backup operation hardly affects the other operations so that the programming pendant can be used even during the backup operation.
7	Backup in binary The data is saved as binary data. The range is same as that of the "ALL CMOS AREA" in {FD/CF}, but the data type is different.	Backup in binary allows the system to be easily and speedily restored.
8	Setting of items Parameters can limit the settings of the backup condition.	Unnecessary settings can be avoided with this setting.

9.3 Automatic Backup Function

9.3.2 Settings for Automatic Backup

To set the automatic backup function, insert a CompactFlash in the CompactFlash slot on the programming pendant, then set each item on the AUTO BACKUP SET display.



Four ways to perform the automatic backup are available: "Cyclic backup," "Backup when switching modes," "Backup when start-up," and "Backup when inputting specified signals."

The automatic backup can be performed only when the robot is not during playback and the robot is stopped.

9.3.2.1 CompactFlash

To use the automatic backup function, insert CompactFlash in the CompactFlash slot on the programming pendant. Only while the DX100 power supply is OFF, the CompactFlash can be inserted or removed.

When the data could not be saved in CompactFlash during an automatic backup due to the absence or insufficient capacity of the CompactFlash, an error message "Cannot backup CompactFlash" appears. At the same time, the signal "occurrence of error" is output, but the robot program will not be stopped. Check if CompactFlash is inserted and if it has enough capacity, and take the necessary actions. If no actions are taken while the error occurs, the data cannot be saved.

Yaskawa recommends that the data be saved in two or more CompactFlash to minimize problems if the CompactFlash should be damaged.

The products in the table below are recommended as Compact Flash for auto backup.

<Currently recommended products>

No.	Manufacturer	Model	Remarks
1	Hagiwara Sys-Com	MCF10P-256MS (IOOAII-YE2)	256MB
2	SiliconSystems, Inc.	SSD-C25M-3512	256MB

Storage capacities needed for CompactFlash are as follows:

When using JANCD-YIF01-1E, JANCD-YIF01-1EV:

(The number of stored files + 1) X 17.8MByte

When using JANCD-YIF01-2E, JANCD-YIF01-2EV, JANCD-YIF01-3E, JANCD-IF01-3EV:

(The number of stored files + 1) X 20.8MByte

The number of storable files is automatically calculated and the MAX vlue is shown when AUTO BACKUP SET display appears.

- 9 System Backup
- Automatic Backup Function 9.3

9.3.2.2 AUTO BACKUP SET Display

Settinas

Select the following items on the AUTO BACKUP SET display and set values for the automatic backup.

- RESERVE TIME BACKUP (VALID/INVALID of the cyclic backup)
- BASE TIME
- BACKUP CYCLE
- RETRY CYCLE
- MODE CHANGE BACKUP (VALID/INVALID of the backup when switching the mode from teach mode to play mode)
- STARTUP AUTO BACKUP (VALID/INVALID of the backup when the DX 100 is started up)
- SPECIFIC INPUT BACKUP (VALID/INVALID of the backup when inputting specified signals)
- UNIV.OUT NO. ON ERROR
- DISPLAY AT EMERGENCY
- DURING ALARM OCCURENCE
- STORED FILE SETTING

With the version in which "STORED FILE SETTING" is settable, the capacity of a CompactFlash card inserted in the programming pendant is checked when the setting window appears. Therefore, a few seconds may be needed to open the setting window and an error may occur if no Compact-Flash is inserted.



When changing the settings of "STORED FILE SETTING" or executing "ARRANGE", the files "CMOSBK.BIN" and "CMOSBK??.BIN" (?? denotes figures) in the Compact-Flash card are changed in name or deleted. If a certain file of this type is needed to be saved before changed in name or deleted, evacuate it into a PC, etc. beforehand.

- 1. Turn ON the DX100.
 - If the auto backup function is already set valid, insert a CompactFlash.
- Insert a CompactFlash in the CompactFlash slot on the programming pendant.
- 3. Change the security mode to the management mode.
- 4. Select {SETUP} under the main menu.

9 System Backup

9.3 Automatic Backup Function

- 5. Select {AUTO BACKUP SET}.
 - The AUTO BACKUP SET display appears.

DATA	EDIT DISPLAY	ОТІСІТҮ 🗍	2 🖻 🌌 📢 🔟	📮 (h	
EX. MEMORY PARAMETER DISPLAY SETUP CONSPLAY SETUP CONSPLAY SETUP	AUTO BACKUP SE RESERVE TIME BASKUP CYCLE MODE CHANGE STARTUP AUTO SPECIFIC INP UNIV.OUT NO. DISPLAY AT E DURING ALARW STORED FILE BACKUP FILES LATEST BACKU	T BACKUP BACKUP BACKUP UT BACKUP UT BACKUP UT BACKUP ON ERROR MERGENCY OCCURENCE SETTING N P FILE -	WALID : [00] : [00] : <td::< td=""> <td::< td=""> <td::< td=""> <td::< td=""> : <td::< td=""> <td< th=""><th>9)</th><th></th></td<></td::<></td::<></td::<></td::<></td::<></td::<></td::<></td::<></td::<></td::<></td::<></td::<></td::<></td::<></td::<></td::<></td::<></td::<></td::<></td::<></td::<></td::<></td::<></td::<></td::<></td::<></td::<></td::<>	9)	
			ARRANGE		N
Main Menu	Simple Menu				

A. RESERVE TIME BACKUP

Set the backup function to valid or invalid in a specified cycle from a specified starting time.

Each time [SELECT] is pressed, "INVALID" and "VALID" are displayed alternately.

The reserve time can be set by inputting values in B,C and D in the display.

Every time values are set to these three items, reset the RESERVE TIME BACKUP to VALID.

If these settings are incorrect, the RESERVE TIME BACKUP cannot be reset to VALID.

If so, check and then change the values to the correct settings.

B. BASE TIME

Specify the reference time to start reserve time backup.

The time elapsed from the reference time for a BACKUP CYCLE period is recognaized as the BACKUP TIME.

The first automatic backup is performed at the first BACKUP TIME after the power of the DX 100 is turned ON.

The automatic backup after the first time, is performed at the interval of BACKUP CYCLES.

The reference time ranges from 0:00 to 23:59.

C. BACKUP CYCLE

Specify the length of time for a cycle to back up. After the first backup, the next backup is performed automatically in the time specified in the BACKUP CYCLE.

Set the backup cycle in units of minutes. The cycle setting ranges from 10 to 9999 minutes, and is longer than the RETRY CYCLE.

D. RETRY CYCLE

Specify the length of time for a cycle to retry backing up when the backup operation is suspended.

After being suspended, the backup is retried in the time specified in the RETRY CYCLE.

Set the retry cycle in units of minutes. The cycle setting ranges from 0 to 255, and is shorter than the BACKUP CYCLE.

When it is set to 0, retry will not be performed.

- 9 System Backup
- 9.3 Automatic Backup Function

E. MODE CHANGE BACKUP

Set the automatic backup function to be valid or invalid when the mode is switched from teach mode to play mode.

Each time [SELECT] is pressed, "INVALID" and "VALID" are displayed alternately.

F. STARTUP AUTO BACKUP

Set the backup function to be valid or invalid when the power of the DX 100 is turned ON.

Each time [SELECT] is pressed, "INVALID" and "VALID" are displayed alternately.

G. SPECIFIC INPUT BACKUP

Set the backup function to be valid or invalid when specific input signal (# 40560) is input (rising edge from 0 to 1).

Each time [SELECT] is pressed, "INVALID" and "VALID" are displayed alternately.

H. UNIV.OUT NO. ON ERROR

Set "1" to the specified user output signal which was specified in this chapter when the automatic backup error occurs.

The term "automatic backup error" here means that the backup is not performed successfully before the next backup (including retry operation) starts.

I. DISPLAY AT EMERGENCY

Set the method of notification of the automatic backup error to "ERROR" or "MESSAGE."

Each time [SELECT] is pressed, "ERROR" and "MESSAGE" are displayed alternately.

J. DURING ALARM OCCURENCE

Set the backup function to be valid or invalid when an alarm is occurred.

Each time [SELECT] is pressed, "INVALID" and "VALID" are displayed alternately.

K. STORED FILE SETTING

Set the number of files to be stored by the automatic backup function. The number mentioned on the right side of this item with "(Max)" indication is the maximum number of files that can be stored in the Compact-Flash inserted when this window is displayed.

The settings range from 1 to (Max). When this setting value is changed, the backup file arrangement starts.

L. BACKUP FILES

Indicates the existence of the files or the number of backup files stored in the CompactFlash inserted when this window is displayed.

M. LATEST BACKUP FILE

Indicates the date of the latest file in the CompactFlash inserted when this window is displayed.

N. ARRANGE

When the setting of maximum number of stored files is changed, the file arrangement of the backup files in the CompactFlash is executed. With this operation, the file arrangement can be performed without changing the maximum number of stored files.

- 9 System Backup
- 9.3 Automatic Backup Function
- 6. Set the desired item, and press [ENTER].

Window Settings

RS parameter can restrict the settings of some items in the automatic backup window.

When setting the bit of RS096 parameter shown below to "1", the corresponding items are restricted. The restricted items are indicated with "INVALID" in the display and inputting/modification to the item becomes impossible. Also, the automatic backup does not function with the restricted items.



9 System Backup

9.3 Automatic Backup Function

9.3.2.3 DX100 Status and Automatic Backup

Backup	DX100 Status		Automatic Backup	
Timing			Compact Flash ready to save the data	Absence or insufficient capacity of the CompactFlash
From a specified starting time	Teach mode	Editing (Accessing to the memory)	Retry	Retry
		When editing is interrupted	Backup	Error
	Play mode Remote mode	Executing jobs	Disabled	Disabled
		When stopped	Backup	Error
When a specified signal(#40560) is input	Teach mode	Editing (Accessing to the memory)	Error	Error
		When editing is interrupted	Backup	Error
	Play mode Remote mode	Executing jobs	Disabled	Disabled
		When stopped	Backup	Error
When switching the mode from the teach mode to the play mode	-		Backup	Error
When the DX100 starts up	-		Backup	Error

- * Retry is not performed when an error occurs.
- * An error can be indicated by a message depending on setting.

Reserve Time Backup

While the data in the DX100 memory is being edited or overwritten, the automatic backup is not performed at the specified backup starting time and is suspended and retried later. To start the backup at the reserved time, set to the time when the robot program is stopped and no job or file is edited.

Backup when Switching from Teach Mode to Play Mode When the mode is repeatedly switched from the teach mode to the play

when the mode is repeatedly switched from the teach mode to the play mode or vice versa within 1 to 2 seconds, backup starts after the last time the mode is switched.

Backup when the DX 100 starts up

Since the automatic backup process is added to the DX100 start-up process, a few extra seconds are needed to start up the DX100.

- 9 System Backup
- 9.3 Automatic Backup Function

Backup when Specific Signal is Input

While the DX100 memory is edited such as overwriting, the backup operation becomes an error even if there is an input to a specific signal (#40560). To start the specific input backup, perform it while the robot program is stopped and a job or file is not being modified.

Also, since the signal input is executed at rising detection, turn the signal to "0" if it is already "1", then return to "1" again.

Overwriting Limit in CompactFlash

The number of times that the CompactFlash can be overwritten is limited to approx. 100,000 times. Because frequent backup operations may shorten the life of CompactFlash, the number of backup times should be minimized as much as possible.

9.3.2.4 Setting Examples

Setting Example 1

The following diagram shows a setting example with the following conditions:

BASE TIME: 12:30

BACKUP CYCLE: 60 (minutes)

RETRY CYCLE: 10 (minutes)



Setting Example 2

The following diagram shows a setting example with the following conditions:

BASE TIME: 20:00

BACKUP CYCLE: 1440 (minutes) (24 hours)

RETRY CYCLE: 60 (minutes)
9 System Backup

9.3 Automatic Backup Function



System Backup

9

9.4 Loading the Backup Data from the CompactFlash

9.4 Loading the Backup Data from the CompactFlash

Restore the backup data saved in the CompactFlash to the DX100 in maintenance mode.

9.4.1 Loading Procedure

- 1. Insert the CompactFlash with the backup data in the CompactFlash slot on the programming pendant.
 - The backup data is stored under the file name "CMOSBK.BIN" or "CMOSBK??.BIN" (?? denotes figures.)
- 2. Turn ON the DX100 power supply while pressing [MAIN MENU].
- 3. Change the security mode to the management mode.
- 4. Select {EX. MEMORY} under the main menu.
 - The sub menu appears.

		Ø
SYSTEM FILE	SECURITY	MANAGEMENT MODE
EX. MEMORY	LOAD	
DISPLAY SETUP	SAVE	
	SYSTEM RESTORE	
	DEVICE	
	FOLDER	
Main Menu	Simple Menu	Maintenance mode

- 5. Select {CompactFlash}.
 - The CompactFlash display appears.

			1	
SYSTEM FILE EX. MEMORY SETUP	DEVICE TARGET DEVICE		Pendant	
Main Menu	Simple Menu	Maintenance mo	ode	

- 9 System Backup
- 9.4 Loading the Backup Data from the CompactFlash
- 6. Select {SYSTEM RESTORE} in the CompactFlash display.
 - The Backup File list display appears.

			1	
SYSTEM FILE EX. MEMORY STUP DISPLAY SETUP	BACKUPFILE LIST yyyy n 1 : 2008-0	r m <u>dd time</u> 18-01 16:25	עעעע mm dd t	ime
Main Menu	Simple Menu	Maintenance mo	ode	

- 7. Select the file to be loaded.
 - The dialog box appears for the YIF/YCP01 board replacement confirmation.

	I		1	
FILE EX. MEMORY DISPLAY SETUP	BACKUPFILE LIS yyyyy 1 : 2008 Exchai YE	mm dd time 08-01 16:25 nged YIF/YCP01 S	уууу mm dd ti board? NO	ne
Main Menu	Simple Menu	Maintenance mo	ode	

- Select {YES} if the YIF/YCP01 board has been replaced, or select {NO} if it has not been replaced.
- Selecting {YES} initializes the system monitoring time.
 Selecting {NO} continues the counting of the current system's monitoring time.

- 9 System Backup
- 9.4 Loading the Backup Data from the CompactFlash
- 8. Select {YES} or {NO} for the message "Exchanged YIF/YCP01 board?"
 - The dialog box appears for the loading confirmation.

	Ø
SYSTEM SYSTEM FILE	BACKUPFILE LIST yyyyy mm dd time 1 : 2008-08-01 16:25
EX. MEMORY	Load? FILE : 2008-08-01 16:25 YES NO
Main Menu	Simple Menu Maintenance mode

- Select {YES} in the loading confirmation dialog box to start loading the contents of "CMOSBK.BIN" or "CMOSBK??.BIN" (?? denotes figures) from the CompactFlash to the DX100 CMOS.
- 9. Select {YES}.



- 9 System Backup 9.5 Error List

9.5 Error List

9.5.1 Error Contents

Error	Data	Message	Cause
No.			
0770	*	The robot or the station is in motion.	The automatic backup would not work when the robot or a manipulator is in motion.
3390		File not found	The file to be loaded no longer exists.
3460	*	Cannot backup CompactFlash	
	1		Insufficient capacity of the CompactFlash
	2		Cannot access the CompactFlash
3501	*	Confirm the status of CompactFlash.	Cannot access the CompactFlash
3550	*	The automatic backup is executed. Try it later.	The automatic backup window cannot be called to display while the automatic backup is being processed.
3551	*	The automatic backup is executed. Arrange the file after it is finished.	The file arrangement cannot be operated during the automatic backup operation.
3560	*	Failed to re-arrange the backup file.	Failed to re-arrange the backup file for another reason than the access to CompactFlash.
3580	*	Accessing to backup file. Try it later.	To display another window and then display the automatic backup window again after "ARRANGE" operation, "ARRANGE" process should be completely finished.
3581	*	Accessing to backup file. Try "ARRANGE"operation later.	The previous "ARRANGE" process should be completely finished to perform the next "ARRANGE" operation.

- 10 Upgrade Function
- 10.1 Functional Overview

10 Upgrade Function

10.1 Functional Overview

DX100 applies two softwares for the CPU configuration: a software for YCP01 (for the main CPU board) and a software for YPP01 (for programming pendant). The system works only with the combination of certain versions due to a compatibility problem of each software.

Therefore, with the system version NS3.00 and the subsequent versions, DX100 can upgrade the software for YPP01 if the combination of the softwares for YCP01 and YPP01 is invalid.

10.2 Upgrade Procedure

10.2.1 Confirmation of Software Version

The compatibility of the versions of YCP01 and YPP01 are automatically checked in 20 seconds after the DX100 power supply is turned on.



- In case the versions of YCP01 and YPP01 matches.
- 1. Automatic upgrade process completes and the communication process between YCP01 and YPP01is restarted.

- 10 Upgrade Function 10.2 Upgrade Procedure
- 2. Initial window appears approx. 40 seconds later.



10.2.2 Automatic Upgrade of YPP01

In case that the pendant application version of YPP01 is older than the one of YCP01 or the pendant appplication version of YPP01 is not compatible to the one of YCP01, the YPP01 is automatically upgraded.

Not only the application software but the OS of the Programming Pendant is also upgraded automatically.

(OS: Operating System)

	Ver 0.01
Auto UpGrade.	
File = ppautoverup.exe	
Do not turn the power off	
bo not tarr the power on.	

- 1. Automatic upgrade process comletes and the communication process between YCP01 and YPP01is restarted.
 - Some upgraded softwares require restart. In this case restart is done automatically and the communication process between YPP01 and YCP01 starts again.
- 2. Initial window appears approx. 40 seconds later.



Every time the OS is upgraded automatically, restart is done. There is no need of calibrating, for the calibration data is taken over.

	DO NOT turn off the main power supply during automatic upgrade process.						
	In fol	ase the main power supply is turned off, exercise the owing process.					
	•	Turn on the main power supply of DX100.					
		 Automatic upgrade might be exercised again. 					
	•	In case error occurs during automatic upgrade process.					
NOTE		(1) Prepare CF for upgrading or USB memory.					
•		(2) Press [2], [8] and [HIGH SPEED] at the same time.-Upgrade of the OS of Programming Pendant					
		(3) Press [INTERLOCK], [8] and [SELECT] at the same time.					
		 (4) Exercise manual upgrading. - Refer to "DX100 Upgrade Procedure" (HW0485193). 					
	•	If no recovery is made with all the procedure above, replace the pendant.					

- 10 Upgrade Function
- 10.3 Error Message

10.3 Error Message

If Error occurs while automatic upgrading, exercise the following procedure.



• Turn on the main power supply of DX100.

- Automatic upgrade might be exercised again.

- In case error occurs during automatic upgrade process.
 - (1) Prepare CF for upgrading or USB memory.
 - (2) Press [2], [8] and [HIGH SPEED] at the same time. -Upgrade of the OS of Programming Pendant
 - (3) Press [INTERLOCK], [8] and [SELECT] at the same time.
 - (4) Exercise manual upgrading. -Refer to "DX100 Upgrade Procedure" (HW0485193) for detail.

- 11 Modification of System Configuration
- 11.1 Addition of I/O Modules

11 Modification of System Configuration

11.1 Addition of I/O Modules

To add I/O modules, turn OFF the power supply.



- 1. Turn ON the power supply again while pressing [MAIN MENU] simultaneously.
- 2. Change the "SECURITY MODE" to the "MANAGEMENT MODE".
- 3. Select {SYSTEM} under the main menu.
 - The system window appears.

	Ţ	
SYSTEM	SETUP	
FILE	VERSION	
EX. MEMORY	SECURITY	
DISPLAY SETUP		
Main Menu	Simple Menu	Maintenance mode

- 4. Select {SETUP}.
 - The SETUP window appears.
 - The items marked with "■" cannot be selected.



- 11 Modification of System Configuration
- 11.1 Addition of I/O Modules
- 5. Select {IO MODULE}.
 - The current status of the mounted I/O module is shown.

						1	
SYSTEM FILE FILE EX. MEMORY DISPLAY SETUP Aa	IO MO ST# 00 01 02 03 04 05 06 07 08 09 10 11 12 13 14 0	DULE DI - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - -	D0 	AI	AO BOARD - NONE - NONE		
Main Menu	Simp	le Men	υÌ	<u> </u>	Maintenance	mode	

- 6. Confirm the status of mounted I/O module.
 - Confirm that each station (ST#) window is the same as the I/O module's actual mounting status.
 - The following information is shown for each station.

ST#	Station address of I/O module
DI	Number of contact input points ¹⁾
DO	Number of contact output points ¹⁾
AI	Number of analog input points ¹⁾
AO	Number of analog output points ¹⁾
BOARD	Circuit board type ²⁾

- 1) A hyphen, -, indicates that the corresponding I/O section is not mounted.
- If the system cannot recognize the circuit board type, a row of stars (*****) are shown. No problem will occur as long as the values displayed in DI, DO, AI, and AO are correct.
- 7. Press [ENTER].
 - Confirm the statuses of the mounted I/O modules for the other stations.



- 11 Modification of System Configuration
- 11.2 Addition of Base and Station Axes
- 8. Press [ENTER].
 - The confirmation dialog box is shown.



- 9. Select {YES}.
 - The system parameters are then set automatically according to the current mounted hardware status. The procedure for the addition of the I/O module is complete.



If there is a difference between the displayed contents and the actual mounted status, confirm the status again. If the status is correct, the I/O module may be defective: in such a case, contact your Yaskawa representative.

11.2 Addition of Base and Station Axes

To add the base and station axes, mount all hardware correctly and then execute maintenance mode.



Addition operation must be performed in the management mode.

In the operation mode or editing mode, only reference of status setting is possible.

When adding a base and a station axis, set the following items:

TYPE

Select one in the type list.

• In case of base axis (B1,B2,B3...B8)

Select one of RECT-X, -Y, -Z, -XY, -XZ, -YZ or -XYZ.

• In case of station axis (S1,S2,S3,S4,S5... S24)

Select UNIV-* ("*" represents the number of axes) when using a mechanism other than the registered type as a station axis.

CONNECTION

In the CONNECTION window, specify the SERVOPACK which is connected with each axis group and the contactor which is used for the SERVOPACK.

DX100	Modification of System ConfigurationAddition of Base and Station Axes						
	AXIS TYPE Select from the axis type list.						
	 In case of TURN-* type 						
	No need to select (The axis type is set as TURN type.)						
	• In case of RECT-* type						
	Select BALL-SCREW type or RACK & PINION type.						
	In case of UNIV-* type						
	Select BALL-SCREW type, RACK & PINION type or TUR	V type.					
	MECHANICAL SPECIFICATION	51					
	 If axis type is ball-screw type, set the following items: 						
	• MOTION RANGE (+) [mm]						
	• MOTION RANGE (-) [mm]						
	REDUCTION RATIO (numerator)						
	REDUCTION RATIO (denominator)						
	• BALL-SCREW PITCH [mm/r]						
	 If axis type is rack & pinion type, set the following items. 						
	• MOTION RANGE (+) [mm]						
	• MOTION RANGE (-) [mm]						
	REDUCTION RATIO (numerator)						
	REDUCTION RATIO (denominator)						
	• PINION DIAMETER [mm]						
	 If axis type is turn type, set the following items. 						
	MOTION RANGE (+) [deg]						
	MOTION RANGE (-) [deg]						
	REDUCTION RATIO (numerator)						
	REDUCTION RATIO (denominator)						
	OFFSET (1st and 2nd axis) [mm]						
	MOTOR SPECIFICATION						
	Set the following items.						
	• MOTOR						
	• SERVO AMP						
	• CONVERTER						
	ROTATION DIRECTION [normal/reverse]						
	• MAX. RPM [rpm]						
	ACCELERATION SPEED [sec]						
	INERTIA RATIO						

 * Select MOTOR, AMPLIFIER and CONVERTER from each type list on the display.

11.2 Addition of Base and Station Axes

11.2.1 Base Axis Setting

11.2.1.1 Selection of Base Axis Type

Select the type of base axis to be added/modified.

- 1. Turn ON the power supply again while pressing [MAIN MENU] simultaneously.
- 2. Change the "SECURITY MODE" to the "MANAGEMENT MODE".
- 3. Select {SYSTEM} under the main menu.
 - The system window appears.

	I	Ø
SYSTEM	SETUP	AGEMENT MODE
FILE	VERSION	
EX. MEMORY	SECURITY	
DISPLAY SETUP		
Main Menu	Simple Menu	Maintenance mode

- 4. Select {SETUP}.
 - The SETUP window appears.
 - Note that the items marked with "■" cannot be set.



5. Select {CONTROL GROUP}.

- 11 Modification of System Configuration
- 11.2 Addition of Base and Station Axes
 - The current control group type is displayed.

			1	
SYSTEM	CONTROL GROUP			
	CONNECT : R1 : VAO	1400-A0*	DETAIL	
	B1 : NON R2 : MHO	E 0006-A0*	DETAIL	
EX. MEMORY	B2 : NON R3 : NON		DETAIL	
	S1 : TUR S2 : TUR	N-1 N-2	DETAIL DETAIL	
Aa	S3 : NON		DETAIL	
		_		
Main Menu	Simple Menu	Maintenanc	e mode	

- 6. Point the cursor to the type of control group to be modified, and press [SELECT].
 - The MACHINE LIST window is displayed.

			Ø	
SYSTEM FILE FILE EX. MEMORY S DISPLAY SETUP A A	MACHINE LIST NONE RECT-XYZ RECT-YZ	RECT-X RECT-XZ RECT-Z	RECT-XY RECT-Y	RECT-X: traverse X-axis base RECT-Y: traverse Y-axis base RECT-Z: traverse Z-axis base RECT-XZ: traverse XZ-axis base RECT-XY: traverse XY-axis base RECT-XY: traverse XY-axis base (See the figures on the next page)
Main Menu	Simple Menu	Maintenand	ce mode	

- 7. Select one in the type list.
 - After the type selection, the window returns to the CONTROL GROUP window.

			(
SYSTEM FILE EX. MEMORY EX. MEMORY DISPLAY SETUP	CONTROL GROUP CONNECT : R1 : VAO B1 : NON R2 : MHO B2 : REC R3 : NON S1 : TUR S2 : TUR S3 : NON	1400-A0* E 2006-A0* T-XYZ E V-1 N-2 E		
Main Menu	Simple Menu	Maintenance m	ode	

- 8. Press [ENTER] in CONTROL GROUP window.
 - The window moves to the CONNECTION window.

DX100

11.2 Addition of Base and Station Axes



11.2 Addition of Base and Station Axes

11.2.1.2 Connection Setting

In the CONNECT window, each axis in respective control groups is specified to be connected to which connector of the SERVO board, or to which brake of the contactor unit, or to which converter.

- 1. Confirm type of each control group in the CONNECTION window.
 - The connection status of each control group is displayed.



- 2. Select the connection item of desired control group.
 - The settable items are displayed.
 - When the item is selected, the window returns to the CONNECTION window.

SYSTEM	CONNECT AXIS BRK CV SV <123456789> TU <123456789> <123456789>
FILE EX. MEMORY TISPLAY SETUP	R1 : #1 [1234567] #1 [1234567] [1111111] R2 : #2 [123456] #1 [123456] [1111111] B2 : ∰ [123] #1 [123] [123] S1 : #1 [] #1 [] [3-] S2 : #2 [12-] #1 [12-] [23-]
Main Menu	Simple Menu 🧿 per of servo board which connects this control gro

- It is possible to change the connection freely between each axis of each control group and each connector (CN) of a SERVO board. The number in [] represents the axis number, and it indicates which axis is to be connected with which connector.
- It is possible to change the connection freely between each axis of each control group and each brake (BRK) of a contactor unit. The number in [] represents the axis number, and it indicates which axis is to be connected with which brake.
- It is possible to change the connection freely between each axis of each control group and each converter (CV). The number in
 [] represents the converter number, and it indicates which axis is to be connected with which converter.

Modification of System ConfigurationAddition of Base and Station Axes

 In this example, B1 (Base) is to be connected as shown in the following manner:

1st axis	\rightarrow	SERVO Board (SV #2),	Connector (7CN),
		Contactor Unit (TU #1),	Brake Connector (BRK7),
		Converter (CV #1)	
2nd axis	→	SERVO Board (SV #2),	Connector (8CN)
		Contactor Unit (TU #1),	Brake Connector (BRK8)
		Converter (CV #2)	
3rd axis	→	SERVO Board (SV #2),	Connector (9CN)
		Contactor Unit (TU #1),	Brake Connector (BRK9)
		Converter (CV #3)	

- 3. Select the desired item.
- 4. Press [ENTER] in the CONNECTION window.
 - The setting in the CONNECTION window is completed and the window moves to the AXES CONFIG window.

11.2.1.3 Axis Configuration Setting

The axis type is specified in the AXES CONFIG window.

- 1. Confirm axis type of each axis in the AXES CONFIG window.
 - The axis type of each axis is displayed.

			(#)	
SYSTEM	AXES CONFIG B2: 走行-XYZ AXIS AXIS TYF	 PE		
FILE	1 : BALL-SCR 2 : BALL-SCR 3 : BALL-SCR	REW REW REW		
EX. MEMORY				
DISPLAY SETUP				
				1
Main Menu	Simple Menu	Maintenance	e mode	

2. Select the axis type to be modified.

- 11.2 Addition of Base and Station Axes
 - (1) The settable axis type is displayed.

			(3)	
SYSTEM	AXES CONFIG B2:走行-XY AXIS AXIS TY	Z PE		
FILE EX. MEMORY E C DISPLAY SETUP	1 : BALL-S 2 : RACKAP 3 : BALL-SU	CREW INION Kew		
Main Menu	Simple Menu	Maintenance	mode	

- (2) Select "BALL-SCREW" when the servo track is ball-screw type, and "RACK&PINION" when the servo track is rack & pinion type. After the selection, the window returns to the AXES CONFIG window.
- (3) Select the axis type.
- 3. Press [ENTER] in the AXES CONFIG window.
- 4. The setting in the AXES CONFIG window is completed and the window moves to the MECHANICAL SPEC window.

11.2.1.4 Mechanical Specification Setting

The mechanical data is specified in the MECHANICAL SPEC window.

- 1. Confirm specification of each axis in the MECHANICAL SPEC window.
 - The mechanical specification of axis is shown.

The MECHANICAL SPEC window (in case of the BALL-SCREW type)

			7	8	
FILE FILE EX. MEMORY EX. MEMORY DISPLAY SETUP TAG	MECHANICAL SPE B 2 : 走行 AXIS TYPE: BAL MOTION RANGE(+ MOTION RANGE(- REDUCTION RATI REDUCTION RATI BALL-SCREW PIT	C 	AXIS: 0.000 mm 0.000 mm 1.000 10.000 mm/r		→ Selected group, type, axis no. and axis type are shown.
Main Menu	Simple Menu	Maintenar	nce mode		

MOTION RANGE : Input maximum moving position (positive (+) direction and negative (-) direction) from home position when setting the home position to 0. (Unit: mm)

- 11 Modification of System Configuration
- 11.2 Addition of Base and Station Axes

 REDUCTION RATIO : Input the numerator and the denominator.
 <e.g.> If the reduction ratio is 1/2, the numerator should be set as 1.0 and the denominator should be set as 2.0.

 BALL-SCREW PITCH: Input the traveling length when the ballscrew rotates once. (Unit: mm/r)

1 MECHANICAL SPEC SYSTEM 走行-XYZ AXIS TYPE: RACK&PINION Selected group, type, axis no. and axis type are shown. MOTION RANGE(+) 0.000 mm FILE MOTION RANGE(-) 0.000 mm REDUCTION RATIO(NUMER) 1.000 REDUCTION RATIO (DENOM) 1.000 EX. MEMORY PINION DIAMETER 10.000 mm DISPLAY SETUR Maintenance mode

The MECHANICAL SPEC window (in case of the RACK&PINION type)

- MOTION RANGE : Input maximum moving position (positive (+) direction and negative (-) direction) from home position when setting the home position to 0. (Unit: mm)
- REDUCTION RATIO: Input the numerator and the denominator.
 <e.g.>If the reduction ratio is 1/120, the numerator should be set as 1.0 and the denominator should be set as 120.0.
- PINION DIAMETER : Input the diameter of a pinion. (Unit: mm)
- 2. Select the item to be modified.
 - Point the cursor to the item subject for setting value modification, and press [SELECT].
- 3. Modify the settings.
 - The selected item is in the input status. Input the setting value, and press [ENTER].
- 4. Press [ENTER] in the MECHANICAL SPEC window.
 - After the setting, the current window moves to the window for the next axis setting. Complete the settings for all axes in the same manner.
 - When [ENTER] is pressed in the MECHANICAL SPEC window for the last axis, the setting in the MECHANICAL SPEC window is completed and the window moves to the MOTOR SPEC window.

- 11 Modification of System Configuration
- 11.2 Addition of Base and Station Axes

11.2.1.5 Motor Specification Setting

The motor data is specified in the MOTOR SPEC window.

- 1. Confirm specification of each axis in the MOTOR SPEC window.
 - The motor specification of each axis is displayed.

			1	8	
SYSTEM	MOTOR SPEC B2 :走 ^約 AXIS TYPE: BAI	行-XYZ <u>_L-</u> SCREW	AXIS:	1	
FILE EX. MEMORY T TO DISPLAY SETUP	MOTOR SERVO AMP CONVERTER ROTATION DIREC MAX RPM ACCELERATION ' INERTIA RATIO	SGMAV-OIA SRD SRDA-CO CTION TIME	NA-YR11 A-SDA03 A12A01A NORMAL 2000 rpm 0.300 sec 300 %		
Main Menu	Simple Menu	Maintenance	e mode		

- 2. Select the desired item.
 - When a numerical value is selected, the number input buffer line appears.
 - When MOTOR (or SERVO AMP or CONVERTER) is selected, the list window of MOTOR (SERVO AMP, or CONVERTER) appears.
 - ROTATION DIRECTION: Set the rotation direction to which the current position is increased. (The counterclockwise view from the loaded side is the normal rotation.)
- Fig. 11-1: AC Servo Motor



- MAX. RPM: Input maximum rotation speed of a motor. (Unit: rpm)
- ACCELARATION TIME: Input time between 0.01 and 1.00 to reach maximum speed from stopping status at 100% JOINT speed. (Unit: sec)
- INERTIA RATIO: The initial value is set at 300 in case of servo track; 0 in case of rotation axis.
 However, if the following phenomenon occurs in motion, deal with the followed procedure.
- <Phenomenon1>

During motion, the axis moves unsteady on advance direction. \rightarrow Confirm the motion with increasing this ratio in each 100.

- 11 Modification of System Configuration
- 11.2 Addition of Base and Station Axes
 - <Phenomenon2>
 - During pause, the motor makes a lot of noise.
 - \rightarrow Confirm the motion with decreasing this ratio in each 100.
- 3. Modify the settings.
- 4. Press [ENTER] in the MOTOR SPEC window.
 - After the setting, the current window moves to the window for the next axis setting. Complete the settings for all axes in the same manner.
 - When [ENTER] is pressed in the MOTOR SPEC window for the last axis, the setting in the MOTOR SPEC window is completed and the confirmation dialog box appears.

SYSTEM	CONTROL GROUP
FILE	CONNECT : R1 : VA01400-A0* B1 : NONE R2 : MH00006-A0*
EX. MEMORY DISPLAY SETUP	Modify? B2 CONTROL GROUP YES NO
Main Menu	Simple Menu Maintenance mode

- If {YES} is selected, the system parameter is set automatically.

11.2.2 Station Axis Setting

11.2.2.1 Selection of Station Axis Type

Select the type of station axis to be added/modified.

- 1. Confirm the type of control group in CONTROL GROUP window.
 - The CONTROL GROUP window appears.

			<i>1</i>	
SYSTEM FILE EX. MEMORY SETUP	MACHINE LIST ON-8 GUN-3 TWIN-GUN UNIV-3 UNIV-6 Z-TURN1	GUN-1 TURN-1 UNIV-1 UNIV-4 X-TURN2 Z-TURN2	GUN-2 TURN-2 UNIV-2 UNIV-5 Y-TURN2	
Main Menu	Simple Menu	Maintenan	ice mode	

- 11 Modification of System Configuration
- 11.2 Addition of Base and Station Axes
- 2. Select the type of control group to be modified.
 - The MACHINE LIST window appears.

			(#)	
FILE FILE EX. MEMORY DISPLAY SETUP	MACHINE LIST NONE GUN-3 TWIN-GUN UNIV-3 UNIV-6 Z-TURN1	GUN-1 TURN-1 UNIV-1 UNIV-4 X-TURN2 Z-TURN2	GUN-2 TURN-2 UNIV-2 UNIV-5 Y-TURN2	TURN-1: TURN 1 AXIS STATION TURN-2: TURN 2 AXIS STATION UNIV-1: UNIVERSAL 1 AXIS STATIO UNIV-2: UNIVERSAL 2 AXIS STATIO
Main Menu	Simple Menu	Maintenance	mode	

- 3. Select desired type in the type list.
 - After the type selection, the window returns to CONTROL GROUP window.
 - Select "UNIV" (universal) when using a mechanism other than the registered type (such as a servo track) as a station axis. When "UNIV" is selected, interpolation motion (linear, circular, etc.) is not supported.



11.2 Addition of Base and Station Axes

11.2.2.2 Connection Setting

In the CONNECTION window, each axis in respective control group is specified to be connected to which connector of the SERVO board, or to which brake of the contactor unit, or to which converter.

1. Confirm type of each control group in the CONNECTION window.

- Connection status of each control group is displayed.



- 2. Select the connection item of desired control group.
 - The settable items are displayed.
 - When the item is selected, the window returns to the CONNECTION window.
 - It is possible to change the connection freely between each axis of each control group and each connector (CN) of a SERVO board. The number in [] represents the axis number, and it indicates which axis is to be connected with which connector.
 - It is possible to change the connection freely between each axis of each control group and each brake (BRK) of a contactor unit. The number in [] represents the axis number, and it indicates which axis is to be connected with which brake.
 - It is possible to change the connection freely between each axis of each control group and each converter (CV). The number in
 [] represents the converter number, and it indicates which axis is to be connected with which converter.
 - In this example, S1 (station) is to be connected as shown in the following manner:

1st axis	\rightarrow	SERVO Board (SV #1),	Connector (7CN),
		Contactor Unit (TU #1),	Brake Connector (BRK7),
		Converter (CV #2)	
2nd axis	÷	SERVO Board (SV #1),	Connector (8CN),
		Contactor Unit (TU #1),	Brake Connector (BRK8),
		Converter (CV #3)	

- 11 Modification of System Configuration
- 11.2 Addition of Base and Station Axes
- 3. Select the desired item.
- 4. Press [ENTER] in the CONNECTION window.
 - The setting in the CONNECTION window is completed and the window moves to the AXES CONFIG window.

11.2.2.3 Axis Configuration Setting

The axis type and motor type are specified in the AXES CONFIG window.

- 1. Confirm axis type of each axis in the AXES CONFIG window.
 - The axis type of each axis is displayed.

The AXES CONFIG window (in case of the TURN type)



The AXES CONFIG window (in case of the UNIVERSAL type)



- 11 Modification of System Configuration
- 11.2 Addition of Base and Station Axes
- 2. Select the axis type to be modified.
 - The settable axis type is displayed.

	I		Ø	
SYSTEM FILE EX. MEMORY DISPLAY SETUP	AXES CONFIG S 1: 汎用-I AXIS AXIS TYP 1 : BALL-SC RACKAPI ROTATIO			
Main Menu	Simple Menu	Maintenance mo	ode	

- 3. Select the desired axis type.
- 4. Press [ENTER] in the AXES CONFIG window
 - The setting in the AXES CONFIG window is completed and the window moves to the MECHANICAL SPEC window.

- 11 Modification of System Configuration
- 11.2 Addition of Base and Station Axes

11.2.2.4 Mechanical Specification Setting

The mechanical data is specified in the MECHANICAL SPEC window.

- 1. Confirm specification of each axis in the MECHANICAL SPEC window.
 - The mechanical specification of axis is shown.

			Ø		
FILE FILE EX. MEMORY SETUP	MECHANICAL SPEC S 1 : DI AXIS TYPE: R0TA MOTION RANGE(+) REDUCTION RATIC REDUCTION RATIC OFFSET(AXIS#1-2	2-2 XTION (NUMER) D(DENOM) 2)	AXIS: 1 0.000 deg 0.000 deg 1.000 1.000 0.000 mm	-	 Selected group, type, axis no. and axis type are shown OFFSET is displayed on the screen of the 1st axis only when the TURN-2 type is selected.
Main Menu	Simple Menu	Maintenance	e mode		

- MOTION RANGE : Input maximum moving position (positive (+) direction and negative (-) direction) from home position when setting the home position to 0. (Unit: deg)
- REDUCTION RATIO: Input the numerator and the denominator.
 <e.g.> If the reduction ratio is 1/120, the numerator should be set as 1.0 and the denominator should be set as 120.0.
- OFFSET : Offset should be specified at "TURN-2" type only.
 Input length between the center of bending

axis (1st axis) and the turning table (2nd axis). (Unit: mm)



- 11 Modification of System Configuration
- 11.2 Addition of Base and Station Axes

The MECHANICAL SPEC window (In case of the BALL-SCREW type)

			R R	3	
SYSTEM	MECHANICAL SPE S1 :汎 AXIS TYPE: BAL	EC Ħ-1 LL-SCREW	AXIS: 1		 Selected group, type, axis no.
FILE EX. MEMORY EX. MEMORY DISPLAY SETUP	MOTION RANGE(- MOTION RANGE(- REDUCTION RATI REDUCTION RATI BALL-SCREW PIT	-) -) (O(NUMER) (O(DENOM) CH	0.000 mm 0.000 mm 1.000 10.000 mm/r		anu axis type are shuwn.
Main Menu	Simple Menu	Maintenar	nce mode		

- MOTION RANGE : Input maximum moving position (positive (+) direction and negative (-) direction) from home position when setting the home position to 0. (Unit: mm)
- REDUCTION RATIO : Input the numerator and the denominator.
 <e.g.> If the reduction ratio is 1/2, the numerator should be set as 1.0 and the denominator should be set as 2.0.
- BALL-SCREW PITCH: Input the traveling length when the ballscrew rotates once. (Unit: mm/r)

			1		
FILE FILE EX. MEMORY DISPLAY SETUP	MECHANICAL SPEO S 1 : ;JLH AXIS TYPE: RACK MOTION RANGE(+) REDUCTION RATE(-) REDUCTION RATE PINION DIAMETER	-1 &PINION (NUMER) (DENOM)	AXIS: 1 0.000 mm 0.000 mm 1.000 1.000 10.000 mm	•	Selected group, type, axis no. and axis type are shown.
Main Menu	Simple Menu	Maintenance	mode		

The MECHANICAL SPEC window (In case of the RACK&PINION type)

- MOTION RANGE : Input maximum moving position (positive (+) direction and negative (-) direction) from home position when setting the home position to 0. (Unit: mm)
- REDUCTION RATIO: Input the numerator and the denominator.
 <e.g.>If the reduction ratio is 1/120, the numerator should be set as 1.0 and the denominator should be set as 120.0.
- PINION DIAMETER : Input the diameter of a pinion. (Unit: mm)

- Modification of System Configuration 11
- 11.2 Addition of Base and Station Axes

1 MECHANICAL SPEC SYSTEM Selected group, type, axis no. AXIS TYPE: ROTATION and axis type are shown. 0.000 deg MOTION RANGE(+) FILE MOTION RANGE(-) 0.000 deg 1.000 REDUCTION RATIO(NUMER) REDUCTION RATIO (DENOM) 1.000 EX. MEMORY DISPLAY SETUR Maintenance mode

The MECHANICAL SPEC window (In case of the ROTATION type)

- MOTION RANGE: Input maximum moving position (positive (+) direction and negative (-) direction) from home position when setting the home position to 0. (Unit: deg)
- REDUCTION RATIO: Input the numerator and the denominator. <e.g.> If the reduction ratio is 1/120, the numerator should be set as 1.0 and the denominator should be set as 120.0.
- 2. Modify the settings.
- 3. Press [ENTER] in the MECHANICAL SPEC window.
 - After the setting, the current window moves to the window for the next axis setting. Complete the settings for all axes in the same manner.When [ENTER] is pressed in the MECHANICAL SPEC window for the last axis, the setting in the MECHANICAL SPEC window is completed and the window moves to the MOTOR SPEC window.

11.2.2.5 Motor Specification Setting

The motor data is specified in the MOTOR SPEC window.

- 1. Confirm specification of each axis in the MOTOR SPEC window.
 - The motor specification of each axis is displayed.

				100		
SYSTEM FILE EX. MEMORY CONSULAY SETUP CA	MOTOR SPEC S 1 : □ ₱ XIS TYPE: ROTA MOTOR SERVO AMP CONVERTER ROTATION DIRECT MAX RPM ACCELERATION TI INERTIA RATIO	-1 TTON SGMAV-0 SRDA-0 TON ME	AXIS: IANA-YRI1 RDA-SDA03 COA12A01A NORMAL 2000 rpm 0.300 sec 0 %	1	→ Se typ axi	lected group, e, axis no. and s type are shown
Main Menu	Simple Menu	Maintenar	nce mode			

- 11 Modification of System Configuration
- 11.2 Addition of Base and Station Axes
- 2. Select desired item.
 - When a numerical value is selected, the number input buffer line appears.
 When MOTOR (or SERVO AMP or CONVERTER) is selected, the

list window of MOTOR (SERVO AMP of CONVERTER) is selected, the

- When the type is selected, the window returns to the AXES CONFIG window.
- ROTATION DIRECTION: Set the rotation direction to which the current position is increased. (The counterclockwise view from the loaded side is the normal rotation.)
- Fig. 11-2: AC Servo Motor



- MAX. RPM: Input maximum rotation speed of a motor. (Unit: rpm)
- ACCELARATION SPEED: Input time between 0.01 and 1.00 to reach maximum speed from stopping status at 100% JOINT speed. (Unit: sec)
- INERTIA RATIO: The initial value is set at 300 in case of servo track;
 0 in case of rotation axis.
 However, if the following phenomenon occurs in motion, deal with the followed procedure.
- <Phenomenon1> During motion, the axis moves unsteady on advance direction.
 - \rightarrow Confirm the motion with increasing this ratio in each 100.
- <Phenomenon2> During pause, the motor makes a lot of noise.
 → Confirm the motion with decreasing this ratio in each 100.
- 3. Modify the settings.



12 DX100 Specification





- Perform the following inspection procedures prior to performing teaching operations. If problems are found, correct them immediately, and be sure that all other necessary processing has been performed.
 - Check for problems in manipulator movement.
 - Check for damage to the insulation and sheathing of external wires.
- Always return the programming pendant to its specified position after use.

If the programming pendant is inadvertently left on the manipulator, fixture, or on the floor, the manipulator or a tool could collide with it during manipulator movement, possibly causing injuries or equipment damage.

- 12DX100 Specification12.1Specification List

Specification List 12.1

0		
Controller	Construction	Free-standing, enclosed type
	Dimensions	Refer to following
	Cooling System	Indirect cooling
	Ambient	0°C to + 45°C (During operation)
	Temperature	-10°C to + 60°C (During transit and storage)
	Relative Humidity	10% to 90%RH (non-condensing)
	Power Supply	3-phase, 200/220 VAC (+10% to -15%) at 60Hz(±2%)
		200 VAC(+10% to -15%) at 50Hz(±2%)
	Grounding	Grounding resistance: 100Ω or less Exclusive grounding
	Digital I/O	Specific signal (hardware) 23 inputs and 5 outputs General signals (standard, max.) 40 inputs and 40 outputs (Transistor: 32 outputs, Relay: 8 outputs)
	Positioning System	By serial communication (absolute encoder)
	Drive Unit	SERVOPACK for AC servomotors
	Acceleration/	Software servo control
	Deceleration	
	Memory Capacity	200000 steps, 10000 instructions

Small capacity A-Type (standard)	MA1400, MA1900, VA1400, MH5L, MH6, HP20D, HP20D-6, 425(W) \times 1200(H) \times 450(D) mm
Medium and Large capacity A-Type (standard)	MH50, MS80, ES165D, ES200D, VS50 425(W) \times 1200(H) \times 450(D) mm

12 DX100 Specification

12.2 Function List

12.2 Function List

Programming	Coordinate	Joint, Rectangular/Cylindrical, Tool, User Coordinates		
Pendant	System			
Operation	Modification of Teaching Points	Adding, Deleting, Correcting (Robot axes and external axes respectively can be corrected.)		
	Inching Operation	Possible		
	Path	Forward/Reverse step, Continuous		
	Confirmation	feeding		
	Speed Adjustment	Fine adjustment possible during operating or pausing		
	Timer Setting	Possible every 0.01 s		
	Short-cut Function	Direct-open function, Multi-window		
	Interface	CF (Compact Flash) card slot, USB port (USB1.1) (At Programming Pendant) RS232C (At Control Circuit Board) LAN (100 BASE-TX/10BASE-T) (At Control Circuit Board) (Option)		
	Application	Arc welding, Spot welding, Handling, General, Others		
Safety Feature	Essential Measures	JIS (Japanese Industrial Standard)		
i cuture	Running Speed Limit	User definable		
	Enable Switch	3 position type. Servo power can be turned on at the middle position only. (Located on programming pendant)		
	Collision proof Frames	S-axis frame (doughnut-sector), Cubic frame (user coordinate)		
	Self-Diagnosis	Classifies error and two types of alarms (major and minor) and displays the data		
	User Alarm Display	Possible to display alarm messages for peripheral device		
	Machine Lock	Test-run of peripheral devices without robot motion		
	Door Interlock	A door can be opened only when a circuit breaker is OFF.		
Maintenance Function	Operation Time Display	Control power-on time, Servo power-on time, Playback time, Operation time, Work time		
	Alarm Display	Alarm message, troubleshooting, previous alarm records		
	I/O Diagnosis	Simulated enabled/disabled output possible		
	T.C.P. Calibration	Automatically calibrates parameters for end effectors using a master positioner		

12DX100 Specification12.3Programming Pendant

Programing	Programming	Interactive programming
Functions	Language	Robot language: INFORM II
	Robot Motion Control	Joint coordinates, Linear/Circular interpolations, Tool coordinates
	Speed Setting	Percentage for joint coordinates, 0.1mm/s units for interpolations, Angular velocity for T.C.P. fixed motion
	Program Control Instructions	Jumps, Calls, Timer, Robot stop, Execution of some instructions during manipulator motion
	Operation Instructions	Preparing the operation instructions for each application Arc (ON), Arc (OFF), etc.
	Variable	Global variable, Local variable
	Variable Type	Byte type, Integer-type, Double precision- type, Real type, Position type
	I/O Instructions	Discrete I/O, Pattern I/O processing

12.3 Programming Pendant

_

Material	Reinforced thermoplastic enclosure with a detachable suspending strap
Dimensions	169(W) \times 314.5(H) \times 50(D) mm (excluding protrusions)
Displayed Units	TFT Color liquid crystal display, VGA (640×480)
	Touch panel
Operated Units	Three-position Enable switch, Start switch, Hold switch, Mode select switch (with key, three mode)
Others	Provided with CF (Compact Flash) card slot USB port (USB1.1) X 1

- 12 DX100 Specification
- 12.4 Equipment Configuration

12.4 Equipment Configuration

The DX100 is comprised of individual units and modules (circuit boards). Malfunctioning components can generally be easily repaired after a failure by replacing a unit or a module.

This section explains the configuration of the DX100 equipment.

12.4.1 Arrangement of Units and Circuit Boards

The arrangements of units and circuit boards in small-capacity, medium-capacity, and large-capacity DX100s are shown.

Small Capacity

SERVOPACK Breaker Power Supply Contact Unit

Fig. 12-1: Configuration for Small-Capacity A-Type (Standard)



Table 12-1: Configuration for Small Capacity

···· ··· ···· ···· ···· ···· ·········								
Model	DX100	SERVOPACK	Breaker	Power Supply				
Туре		(Converter integrated)		Contact Unit				
MH5	ERDR-MH00005-A00	JZRCR-YSV01-11	NF32-SW 3P 15A	JZRCR-YPU01-1				
MH5L								
MH6	ERDR-MH00006-A00	JZRCR-YSV02-11	NF32-SW 3P 15A	JZRCR-YPU01-1				
MA1400	ERDR-MA01400-A00	JZRCR-YSV02-11	NF32-SW 3P 15A	JZRCR-YPU01-1				
VA1400	ERDR-VA01400-A00	JZRCR-YSV02-31	NF32-SW 3P 15A	JZRCR-YPU01-1				
MA1900	ERDR-MA01900-A00	JZRCR-YSV03-11	NF32-SW 3P 15A	JZRCR-YPU01-1				
HP20D	ERDR-HP0020D-A00	JZRCR-YSV03-11	NF32-SW 3P 15A	JZRCR-YPU01-1				
HP20D-6								

- 12 DX100 Specification
- 12.4 Equipment Configuration

Medium and Large Capacity

Fig. 12-2: Configuration for Medium and Large Capacity A-Type (Standard)



Table 12-2(a): Configuration for Medium Capacity

Model	DX100	SERVOPACK	Converter	Breaker	Power Supply
Туре					Contact Unit
MH50	ERDR-MH00050-A00	JZRCR- YSV04-11	SRDA- COA30A01A-E	NF32-SW 3P 30A	JZRCR-YPU01-1
MS80	ERDR-MS00080-A00	JZRCR- YSV05-11	SRDA- COA30A01A-E	NF32-SW 3P 30A	JZRCR-YPU01-1
VS50	ERDR-VS00050-A00	JZRCR- YSV05-41	SRDA- COA30A01A-E	NF32-SW 3P 30A	JZRCR-YPU01-1
SIA50D	ERDR-SIA050D-A00	JZRCR- YSV05-41	SRDA- COA30A01A-E	NF32-SW 3P 30A	JZRCR-YPU01-1

Table 12-3(a): Configuration for Large Capacity

Model Type	DX100	SERVOPACK	Converter	Breaker	Power Supply Contact Unit
ES165D	ERDR-ES0165D-A00	JZRCR- YSV06-11	SRDA- COA30A01A-E	NF32-SW 3P 30A	JZRCR-YPU01-1
ES200D	ERDR-ES0200D-A00	JZRCR- YSV06-11	SRDA- COA30A01A-E	NF32-SW 3P 30A	JZRCR-YPU01-1
- 12 DX100 Specification
- 12.4 Equipment Configuration

12.4.2 Cooling System of the Controller Interior

The backside duct fan draws in air from the air intake and expels it from the air outlet to cool the SERVOPACK. The fan mounted inside the door circulates the air to keep temperature even throughout the interior of the DX100. Make sure the door of the DX100 is closed when it's used to keep this cooling system effective.

Fig. 12-3: .Cooling System



13 Description of Units and Circuit Boards



Perform the following inspection procedures prior to performing teaching operations. If problems are found, correct them immediately, and be sure that all other necessary processing has been performed.

- Check for problems in manipulator movement.
- Check for damage to insulation and sheathing of external wires.
- Always return the programming pendant to its specified position after use.

If the programming pendant is inadvertently left on the manipulator or fixture, or on the floor, the manipulator or a tool could collide with it during manipulator movement, possibly causing injuries or equipment damage. Cautions for Connection of Dual Input Signals





- 13 Description of Units and Circuit Boards
- 13.1 Power Supply Contactor Unit

13.1 Power Supply Contactor Unit

The power supply contactor unit consists of the power supply contactor sequence circuit board (JARCR-YPC01-1) and the contactor (1KM, 2KM) for servo power and the line filter (1Z). It turns the contactor servo power ON and OFF using the signal for servo power control from the power supply contactor sequence circuit board and supplies power(3-phase AC200/220V) to the unit.

The power supply (single phase AC200/220V) is supplied to the control power supply via the line filter.

Model	Robot Type
JZRCR-	MH5, MH5L, MH6, MA1400, VA1400, MA1900, HP20D,
YPU01-□	HP20D-6, MH50, MS80, VS50, ES165D, ES200D, SIA50D

Table 13-1: Power Supply Contactor Unit Models



13 Description of Units and Circuit Boards

13.2 Major Axes Control Circuit Board (SRDA-EAXA01)

13.2 Major Axes Control Circuit Board (SRDA-EAXA01)

13.2.1 Major Axes Control Circuit Board (SRDA-EAXA01)

The major axes control circuit board (SRDA-EAXA01) controls the servomotors of the manipulator's six axes. It also controls the converter, the PWM amplifiers, and the power supply contactor circuit board of the power supply contactor unit. Mounting an external axes control circuit board of an option (SRDA-EAXB01) makes it possible to control the servomotor of nine axes, including the robot axes.

The major axes control circuit board (SRDA-EAXA01□) also has the following functions.

- Brake Power Supply Control Circuit
- Shock sensor (shock) input circuit
- Direct-in circuit



Fig. 13-2: *Major Axes Control Circuit Board* (SRDA-EAXA01

- 13 Description of Units and Circuit Boards
- 13.2 Major Axes Control Circuit Board (SRDA-EAXA01)

13.2.2 Connection for Tool Shock Sensor (SHOCK)

- 13.2.2.1 To connect the tool shock sensor directly to the tool shock sensor signal line
 - 1. Disconnect the minus SHOCK (-) and plus SHOCK (+) pin terminal from the DINAMIC connector, the EAXA-CN512 major axes control circuit board.
 - 2. Connect the minus SHOCK (-) and plus SHOCK (+) pin terminals to the signal line of the tool shock sensor. Use the following pin terminals for preparing the end of the signal line.

Pin Terminal Name	Pin Terminal Model	Signal Line Terminal Model
SHOCK-	TMEDN-630809-MA	TMEDN-630809-FA (manufactured by NICHIFU Co., Ltd.)
SHOCK+	TMEDN-630809-FA	TMEDN-630809-MA (manufactured by NICHIFU Co., Ltd.)

Fig. 13-3: Direct Connection to Tool Shock Sensor Sig	gnal Line
---	-----------



- 13 Description of Units and Circuit Boards
- 13.2 Major Axes Control Circuit Board (SRDA-EAXA01)

13.2.2.2 To connect the tool shock sensor with the cable that is built into the manipulator

- Disconnect the minus SHOCK (-) and plus SHOCK (+) pin terminal from the DINAMIC connector, the EAXA-CN512 major axes control circuit board.
- 2. Connect the minus SHOCK (-) pin terminal to the minus SHOCK (-) pin terminal of the manipulator.



Cable that is built into the manipulator is not connected to shocks sensor because the tool shock sensor is a option. For connecting the tool shock sensor, refer to the wiring diagrams in the INSTRUCTIONS for the manipulator.



"System Setup" at page 8-1 for details.

Fig. 13-4: Connection with Manipulator Cable

13 Description of Units and Circuit Boards

13.2 Major Axes Control Circuit Board (SRDA-EAXA01)

13.2.3 Connection for Direct-in

■ Direct-in (Servo) 1 to 6

This signal is used to input a responsive signal in search functions.





The part of wiring is for the slave for the coordinated control side major axes control circuit board, SRDA-EAXA01

13 Description of Units and Circuit Boards

13.3 CPU Unit

13.3 CPU Unit

13.3.1 CPU Unit Configuration

CPU unit consists of circuit board racks, control circuit boards, robot I/F board. The JZNC-YRK01-E CPU unit contains only circuit board racks and control circuit boards. It does not contain robot I/F board.

Fig. 13-6: CPU Unit Configuration (JZNC- YRK01-1E)



13 Description of Units and Circuit Boards

13.3 CPU Unit

13.3.2 Unit and Circuit Board in the CPU Unit

13.3.2.1 Control Circuit Board (JANCD-YCP01-E)

This board performs to control the entire system, display to the programming pendant, control the operating keys, control operation and calculate interpolation. This board has the Serial interface for RS-232C and LAN (100BASE-TX/10BASE-T).

13.3.2.2 Robot I/F Board (JANCD-YIF01-1E)

The robot I/F board controls the entire robotic system. It is connected to the control circuit board (JANCD-YCP01-E) with a PCI bus interface on the backboard, and to the major axes control circuit board (SRDA-EAXA01A-□) with high-speed serial transmissions.

13 Description of Units and Circuit Boards

13.4 CPS Unit (JZNC-YPS01-E)

13.4 CPS Unit (JZNC-YPS01-E)

This unit (JZNC-YPS01-E)supplies the DC power (DC5V, DC24V) for control (system, I/O, brake). It is also equipped with the input function for turning the control power supply ON and OFF.





13Description of Units and Circuit Boards13.4CPS Unit (JZNC-YPS01-E)

Items	Specifications				
Input	Rating Input Vo Voltage Fluctua Frequency:	Rating Input Voltage:200/220VACVoltage Fluctuation Range:+10% to -15% (170 to 242VAC)Frequency:50/60Hz ± 2Hz (48 to 62Hz)			
Output Voltage	DC + 5V DC +24V (24V	DC + 5V DC +24V (24V1: System, 24V2: I/O, 24V3: Brake)			
Indicator	DISPLAY	DISPLAY Color Status			
	SOURCE Green Lights with power supply input. Lights out when internal live part completes discharge. (Power supply status; being input)		oply input. nal live part completes : being input)		
	POWER ON	Green	Lights when PWR_OI (Power supply status:	K output signal is ON. : being output)	
	+5V	Red	Lights with +5V over- (ON when abnormal)	current	
	+24V	Red	Lights with +24V over (ON when abnormal)	r-current	
	FAN	Red	Lights when FAN erro	or occurs.	
	OHT	Red	Lights when unit interior overheats		
ON/OFF	In our the DX too controller power, turn ON the non-fuse breaker of the controller is not located at the workplace, the control power supply can be turned ON/OFF by an external device, etc. after the non-fuse breaker of the controller is turned ON. It operated by the external switch connected with CN152 of the CPS unit as shown the following figure. (CN152-1 and CN152-2 is shortaged when shipment) <i>Fig. 13-8: Connection to Control Power Supply Unit</i> DX100 Control Power Supply Control Power Supply Control Power Supply CPS-420F				
	R-IN R-INCOM See chapter 13.8	CN152 -1 -2 -2 -2	Corr	1trol Power Supply ON/OFF Switch	

13 Description of Units and Circuit Boards

13.5 Brake Control Board (JANCD-YBK01-DE)

13.5 Brake Control Board (JANCD-YBK01-□E)

13.5.1 Brake Control Board (JANCD-YBK01-□E)

Brake Control Board controls ON/OFF of the brakes of total nine axes (Robot + external axes) according to the command signal from Major Axes Control Circuit Board (SRDA-EAXA01□).



13 Description of Units and Circuit Boards

13.6 Robot I/O Unit (JZNC-YIU01-E)

13.6 Robot I/O Unit (JZNC-YIU01-E)

13.6.1 Robot I/O Unit (JZNC-YIU01-E)

Four digital I/O connectors for the robot universal I/O are provided: 40 inputs and 40 outputs.

The I/Os are divided into two types: universal I/O and specific I/O. The I/O assignment differs depending on the application. Specific I/O is a signal in which the part is decided in advance. Specific I/O is used when the external operation equipment such as positioner controller and centralized controller control the manipulator and related equipment as a system. Universal I/O are mainly used as timing signals for the manipulator and peripheral devices in jobs that require robot motion.

Refer to *chapter 13.12 "Universal I/O Signal Assignment" at page 13-40* for more details on signal allocation.

For the connection of the robot's universal I/O signal connectors, and the I/O signal related to start and stop, refer to *"Connection wire with Universal I/O Connector (CN306, 307, 308, 309)" at page 13-14* and *"Specific I/O Signal Related to Start and Stop" at page 13-15*

Fig. 13-9: I/O Unit (JZNC-YIU01-E)



13 Description of Units and Circuit Boards13.6 Robot I/O Unit (JZNC-YIU01-E)

Connection wire with Universal I/O Connector (CN306, 307, 308, 309) Please refer to the figure below when you manufacture the cable connecting with robot universal I/O connector (CN306, 307, 308, 309) of robot I/O unit (JZNC-YIU01-E). Unshielded twisted pair cable must be used.(The cable side connector and the I/O terminal block are the options)



Model: TIFS553YS (KASUGA ELECTRIC)

13 Description of Units and Circuit Boards

13.6 Robot I/O Unit (JZNC-YIU01-E)

Specific I/O Signal Related to Start and Stop

The following signals are specific I/O signals related to start and stop.

- Servo ON (depending on application: JZNC-YIU01-E)
- External Servo ON (common to all application: Specific input terminal block MXT)
- External Start (depending on application: JZNC-YIU01-E)
- Operating
- External Hold (corr
 - (common to all application: Specific input terminal block MXT)

(depending on application: JZNC-YIU01-E)

 External Emergency Stop (common to all application: Specific input terminal block MXT)





13 Description of Units and Circuit Boards13.6 Robot I/O Unit (JZNC-YIU01-E)

Example of Servo ON Sequence Circuit from External Device

Only the rising edge of the servo ON signal is valid. This signal turns ON the manipulator servo power supply. The set and reset timings are shown in the following.



Example of Start Sequence Circuit from External Device Only the rising edge of the external start signal is valid. This signal starts the manipulator. Reset this signal with the interlock configuration that determines if operation can start and with the playback (RUNNING) signal confirming that the manipulator has actually started moving.



	13 Description of Units and Circuit Boards
DX100	13.6 Robot I/O Unit (JZNC-YIU01-E)
	Connection of External Power Supply for I/O At factory setting, the internal power supply for I/O is used. If the external power supply for I/O is used, connect it with following procedure.
	 Remove the wire connected between CN303-1 to -3 and CN303-2 to -4 of the robot I/O unit.

2. Connect +24V of the external power supply to CN303-1 and 0V to CN303-2 of the robot I/O unit.

For the connection of the CN303 connector, refer to *chapter 13.8 "WAGO Connector" at page 13-21.*



Fig. 13-10: Connection of External Power Supply for I/O

In case of using internal power supply

In case of using external power supply



- 13 Description of Units and Circuit Boards
- 13.7 Machine Safety Unit (JZNC-YSU01-1E)

13.7 Machine Safety Unit (JZNC-YSU01-1E)

13.7.1 Machine Safety Unit (JZNC-YSU01-1E)

This unit contains dual processing circuits for safety signal.

It processes external safety signals with the dual processing circuits and control ON/OFF of the contactor for SERVO power supply of the contactor unit (JZRCR-YPU) according to conditions.

Followings are the main functions of Machine Safety Unit.

- Robot specific I/O circuit (safety signal dual circuits)
- Servo-ON Enable (ONEN) Input Circuit (dual circuits)
- Overrun (OT, EXOT) Input Circuit (dual circuits)
- Programming Pendant Signal PPESP, PPDSW, etc. Input Circuit (safety signal dual circuits)
- Contactor Control Signal Output Circuit (dual circuits)
- Emergency Stop Signal Input Circuit (dual circuits)



- 13 Description of Units and Circuit Boards
- 13.7 Machine Safety Unit (JZNC-YSU01-1E)

13.7.2 Connection for Servo-ON Enable Input (ONEN1 and ONEN2)

Connect the ONEN signal lines to enable the function to turn ON or OFF the servo power supply of an individual servo when a robotic system is divided into areas. Because these signals are not used for units of standard specifications, a jumper cable is connected as shown in the following figure.

For safety reasons, dual circuits are used for the Servo-ON Enable input signals. Connect the signal so that both input signals are turned ON or OFF at the same time. If only one signal is turned ON, an alarm occurs.

Refer to "8 Servo Power Supply Individual Control Function" of "Independent/Coordinated Function Instructions Manual" for the usage of the Servo-ON Enable signals.

For the connection of CN211 Connector, refer to *chapter 13.8 "WAGO Connector" at page 13-21*

Fig. 13-11: Connection for Servo-ON Enable Input



- 13 Description of Units and Circuit Boards
- 13.7 Machine Safety Unit (JZNC-YSU01-1E)

13.7.3 Connection for External Axis Overrun (EXOT)

With a unit of standard specifications without an external axis, the external axis overrun input signal is not used. In this case, a jumper cable is connected as shown in the following figure.

If an overrun input signal for an axis other than manipulator axes, for example the external axis, is required, connect the signal input circuit in the following manner.

For safe reason, a dual circuits are used for the external axis overrun signal input. Connect the external axis overrun signal so that both input signals are turned ON or OFF at the same time. If only one signal is turned ON, an alarm occurs.

- 1. Remove the jumper cable between the connectors CN211-9 and -10 and between the connectors CN211-11 and -12 of the JZNC-YSU01-1E machine safety unit.
- 2. Connect the external axis overrun wiring between the connectors CN211-9 and -10 and between the connectors CN211-11 and -12 of the JZNC-YSU01-1E machine safety unit.

For the connection of CN211 Connector, refer to *chapter 13.8 "WAGO Connector" at page 13-21*







- 13 Description of Units and Circuit Boards
- 13.8 WAGO Connector

13.8 WAGO Connector

CN211 on the machine safety unit (JZNC-YSU01-1E), CN152 on the CPS unit (JZNC-YPS01-E), and CN303 on the robot I/O unit (JZNC-YIU01-E) are equipped with a connector made by WAGO.

The "wiring tool for the WAGO connector" is necessary to wire the WAGO connector.

The tools (total 3, 2 types) are supplied with the DX100.

Use them with the appropriate sizes of connectors.

The wiring procedure is described as follows:

1. Insert part A of the wiring tool into one of the holes designed for the tool.



Connecto	or to be applied	Specification		
CPS unit:	(JZNC-YPS01-E) CN152	Max cable outside diameter: Stripped lentgh:	4.1mm dia. 8-9mm	
Machine safety unit Robot I/O unit:	: (JZNC-YSU01-1E) CN211 (JZNC-YIU02-E) CN303	Max cable outside diameter: Stripped lentgh:	3.4mm dia. 7mm	

- 13 Description of Units and Circuit Boards
- 13.8 WAGO Connector
- 2. Insert or pull out the wire while pushing the wiring tool downward (Direction of the arrow).



3. Remove the wiring tool from the connector. (Complete) Keep this wiring tool for the future use.

- 13 Description of Units and Circuit Boards
- 13.9 Robot Specific Input Terminal Block (MXT)

13.9 Robot Specific Input Terminal Block (MXT)

The robot specific input termial block (MXT) is equipped at lower part of the right side of DX100 as shown below. The input termilnal block (MXT) is used for the input of robot system signals.

For connections, refer to connection diagrams for each corresponding items.





DX100 Inside Right Side

- 13 Description of Units and Circuit Boards
- 13.9 Robot Specific Input Terminal Block (MXT)

Wiring Procedure of the MXT Connector

For your safety, appropriate work must be done by following the instructions below.

1. Tool: Screwdriver

- For the connection, be sure to use a screwdriver of an applicable size and configuration.
- * WAGO standard screwdriver WAGO 210-119 WAGO 210-119SB (Short, delivered with the product)



- 2. Applicable Wires
 - (1) The length of the exposed conductor (L) should be as follows:
 - * The length of the exposed conductor set for the terminal block (L) WAGO series 250 (with 5.0 mm pitch): 9-10 mm
 - * Applicable max cable outside diameter: 3.1 mm dia.



(2) In case that the conductor is bent or feazed, make it straight as illustrated in the figure above.

- 13 Description of Units and Circuit Boards
- 13.9 Robot Specific Input Terminal Block (MXT)
- 3. Wire Connection





(1) Place the screwdriver on the lever upright as shown in the figure below and push straight down.



(2) Insert the wire into the connection hole slowly until its leading end touches the end of the hole.

For thin wires, never insert the wire with force, or the wire jacket may get caught in.



- (3) Pull out the screwdriver to clamp the conductor with a spring.
- (4) Check if the wire is connected firmly by pulling the wire softly.

13 Description of Units and Circuit Boards

13.9 Robot Specific Input Terminal Block (MXT)

External Emergency Stop

This signal is used to connect the emergency stop switch of an external device. If the signal is input, the servo power is turned OFF and the job is stopped. While the signal is input, the servo power cannot be turned ON.







- 13 Description of Units and Circuit Boards
- 13.9 Robot Specific Input Terminal Block (MXT)

Safety Plug

This signal is used to turn OFF the servo power if the door on the safeguarding is opened. Connect to the interlock signal from the safety plug on the safeguarding door. If the interlock signal is input, the servo power turns OFF. While the signal is turned ON. The servo power cannot be turned ON. Note that these signals are disabled in teach mode.



is input.

Fig. 13-15: Connection for Safety Plug



13 Description of Units and Circuit Boards

13.9 Robot Specific Input Terminal Block (MXT)

Installation of Safety Plug

The manipulator must be surrounded by a safeguarding and a door protected by an interlock function. The door must be opened by the technician to enter and the interlock function stops the robot operation when the door is open. The safety plug input signal is connected to the interlock signal from the gate.



If the servo power is ON when the interlock signal is input, the servo power turns OFF. The servo power cannot be turned ON while the interlock signal is input. However, the servo power does not turn OFF when the door is opened only during the teach mode. In this case, the servo power can be turned ON while the interlock signal is input.

- 13 Description of Units and Circuit Boards
- 13.9 Robot Specific Input Terminal Block (MXT)

Full-speed Test

This signal is used to reset the slow speed limit for the test run in the teach mode.

If this signal input circuit is short-circuited, the speed of the test run becomes 100% in the play mode.

If this signal's circuit is open, the status SSP input signal determines the slow speed: The first slow speed (16%) or second slow speed (2%).

Fig. 13-16: Connection for Full-speed Test



DX100

- 13 Description of Units and Circuit Boards
- 13.9 Robot Specific Input Terminal Block (MXT)

Slow Speed Mode Selection

This signal is used to determine the speed of the test run when the FST (full-speed test) signal input circuit is open.

Open: Second slow speed (2%)

Short-circuit: First slow speed (16%)

Fig. 13-17: Connection for Slow Speed Mode Selection



External Servo ON

This signal is used to connect the servo ON switch of an external operation device. If the signal is input, the servo power supply is turned ON.

Fig. 13-18: Connection for External Servo ON



- 13 Description of Units and Circuit Boards
- 13.9 Robot Specific Input Terminal Block (MXT)

External Hold

This signal is used to connect the temporary stop switch of an external device. If the signal is input, the job is stopped. While the signal is input, starting and axis operations are disabled.



is input.





 DX100
 13 Description of Units and Circuit Boards

 13.9 Robot Specific Input Terminal Block (MXT)

 External Enable Switch This signal is used to connect Enable switch other than the one on the programming pendant when two people are teaching.

 Image: CAUTION

 • Always connect the signals after removing jumper cable.

Injury or damage to machinery may result because the external emergency stop do not work even if the signal is input.





Description of Units and Circuit Boards Robot Specific Input Terminal Block (MXT)

Signal Name	Connection	Dual	Function	Factory Setting	
	No. (MXT) inp				
EXESP1+	-19	Applicable	External Emergency Stop	Short-circuit with a	
EXESP1- EXESP2+ EXESP2-	-20 -21 -22		Used to connect the emergency stop switch of an external device. If the signal is input, the servo power is turned OFF and the job is stopped. While the signal is input, the servo power cannot be turned ON.	jumper cable	
SAFF1+	-9	Applicable	Safety Plug	Short-circuit with a	
SAFF1- SAFF2+ SAFF2-	-10 -11 -12		Used to turn OFF the servo power if the door on the safeguarding is opened. Connect to the interlock signal from the safety plug on the safeguarding door. If the interlock signal is input, the servo power turns OFF. While the signal is turned ON. The servo power cannot be turned ON. Note that these signals are disabled in teach mode.	jumper cable	
FST1+	-23	Applicable	Full-speed Test	Open	
FST1- FST2+ FST2-	-24 -25 -26		Used to reset the slow speed limit for the test run in the teach mode. If this signal input circuit is short-circuited, the speed of the test run becomes 100% in the teach mode. If this signal's circuit is open, the status SSP input signal determines the safety speed: The first slow speed (16%) or second slow speed (2%).		
SSP+	-27	-	Slow Speed Mode Selection	Short-circuit with a	
SSP-	-28		Used to determine the speed of the test run when the FST (full-speed test) signal input circuit is open. Open: Second slow speed (2%) Short-circuit: First slow speed (16%)	[−] jumper cable	
EXSVON+	-29	-	External Servo ON	Open	
EXSVON-	-30		Use to connect the servo ON switch of an external operation device. If the signal is input, the servo power supply is turned ON.		
EXHOLD+	-31	-	External Hold	Short-circuit with a	
EXHOLD-	-32		Used to connect the temporary stop switch of an external device. If the signal is input, the job is stopped. While the signal is input, starting and axis operations are disabled.	jumper cable	
EXDSW1+	-33	Applicable	External Enable Switch	Short-circuit with a	
EXDSW1-	-34 -35		Used to connect a Enable switch other than the one on the programming pendant when two people are teaching.	jumper cable	
EXDSW2-	-30				

13 Description of Units and Circuit Boards

13.10 Contact Output of Emergency Stop Button

13.10 Contact Output of Emergency Stop Button

The contact output terminals for the emergency stop button on the programming pendant and the door front are provided on the terminal block 2XT (screw size M3.5) at lower part of the right side of DX100. These contact outputs are always valid no matter of the DX100 main power supply status ON or OFF. (Status output signal: normally closed contact)







13 Description of Units and Circuit Boards

13.11 SERVOPACK

13.11 SERVOPACK

A SERVOPACK consists of a converter and a PWM amplifier of which there are two types. One type is the SERVOPACK with a combined converter and a PWM amplifier and the other type is one where both units are separate. (Refer to attached table "SERVOPACK Configuration").

13.11.1 Description of Each Unit

13.11.1.1 Converter

This exchanges the power supply (3-phase : AC200/220V) supplied by the contactor unit for DC power supply and supplies the power to PWM amplifiers for each axis.

13.11.1.2 PWM Amplifier

This exchanges the DC power supply supplied by a converter for a 3-phase motor power source and outputs to each servo motor.

13.11.2 SERVOPACK Configuration

Table 13-2:

Configuration Device		Device	MH5/MH5L	MH6	MA1400	VA1400
			Model	Model	Model	Model
SERVOPACK			JZRCR-YSV01-11	JZRCR-YSV02-11	JZRCR-YSV02-11	JZRCR-YSV02-31
	Converter		SRDA- COA12A01A-E	SRDA- COA12A01A-E	SRDA- COA12A01A-E	SRDA- COA12A01A-E
	PWM Amplifier	MM S SRDA- nplifier SDA14A01A-F		SRDA- SDA14A01A-E	SRDA- SDA14A01A-E	SRDA- SDA14A01A-E
		L	SRDA- SDA14A01A-E	SRDA- SDA14A01A-E	SRDA- SDA14A01A-E	SRDA- SDA14A01A-E
		U	SRDA- SDA06A01A-E	SRDA- SDA14A01A-E	SRDA- SDA14A01A-E	SRDA- SDA14A01A-E
		R	SRDA- SDA03A01A-E	SRDA- SDA06A01A-E	SRDA- SDA06A01A-E	SRDA- SDA06A01A-E
		В	SRDA- SDA03A01A-E	SRDA- SDA06A01A-E	SRDA- SDA06A01A-E	SRDA- SDA06A01A-E
		Т	SRDA- SDA03A01A-E	SRDA- SDA06A01A-E	SRDA- SDA06A01A-E	SRDA- SDA06A01A-E
		E				SRDA- SDA14A01A-E
13 Description of Units and Circuit Boards 13.11 SERVOPACK

Table 13-3:

Configuration Device		ice	MA1900	HP20D
				HP20D-6
			Model	Model
SERVOPACK			JZRCR-YSV03-11	JZRCR-YSV03-11
	Converter		SRDA-COA12A01A-E	SRDA-COA12A01A-E
	PWM Amplifier	S	SRDA-SDA14A01A-E	SRDA-SDA14A01A-E
		L	SRDA-SDA21A01A-E	SRDA-SDA21A01A-E
		U	SRDA-SDA14A01A-E	SRDA-SDA14A01A-E
		R	SRDA-SDA06A01A-E	SRDA-SDA06A01A-E
		В	SRDA-SDA06A01A-E	SRDA-SDA06A01A-E
		Т	SRDA-SDA06A01A-E	SRDA-SDA06A01A-E
		E		

Table 13-4:

Configuration Device		MH50	MS80	VS50/SIA50D
		Model	Model	Model
Converter		SRDA-COA30A01A-E	SRDA-COA30A01A-E	SRDA-COA30A01A-E
SERVOPACK		JZRCR-YSV04-11	JZRCR-YSV05-11	JZRCR-YSV05-41
PWM	S	SRDA-SDA71A01A-E	SRDA-SDA71A01A-E	SRDA-SDA71A01A-E
Amplifier	L	SRDA-SDA71A01A-E	SRDA-SDA71A01A-E	SRDA-SDA71A01A-E
	U	SRDA-SDA35A01A-E	SRDA-SDA71A01A-E	SRDA-SDA71A01A-E
	R	SRDA-SDA14A01A-E	SRDA-SDA14A01A-E	SRDA-SDA14A01A-E
	В	SRDA-SDA14A01A-E	SRDA-SDA14A01A-E	SRDA-SDA14A01A-E
	Т	SRDA-SDA14A01A-E	SRDA-SDA14A01A-E	SRDA-SDA14A01A-E
	E			SRDA-SDA71A01A-E

Tabl	e	13-	5:
	-	-	-

Configuration Device		ES165D	ES200D	
		Model	Model	
Converter		SRDA-COA30A01A-E	SRDA-COA30A01A-E	
SERVOPACK		JZRCR-YSV06-11	JZRCR-YSV06-11	
	PWM Amplifier	S	SRDA-SDA71A01A-E	SRDA-SDA71A01A-E
		L	SRDA-SDA71A01A-E	SRDA-SDA71A01A-E
		U	SRDA-SDA71A01A-E	SRDA-SDA71A01A-E
		R	SRDA-SDA35A01A-E	SRDA-SDA35A01A-E
		В	SRDA-SDA21A01A-E	SRDA-SDA21A01A-E
		Т	SRDA-SDA21A01A-E	SRDA-SDA21A01A-E
		E		

13 Description of Units and Circuit Boards 13.11 SERVOPACK



Fig. 13-22: SERVOPACK Configuration for MH5, MH5L, MH6, MA1400, MA1900, HP20D, HP20D-6





DX100

13 Description of Units and Circuit Boards13.11 SERVOPACK



Fig. 13-24: SERVOPACK Configuration for MH50, MS80

Fig. 13-25: SERVOPACK Configuration for VS50, SIA50D



DX100

13 Description of Units and Circuit Boards 13.11 SERVOPACK



Fig. 13-26: SERVOPACK Configuration for ES165D, ES200D

13.12 Universal I/O Signal Assignment

13.12.1 Arc Welding

Fig. 13-27: JZNC-YIU01-E (CN308 Connector) I/O Allocation and Connection Diagram (For Arc Welding)



DX100

13 Description of Units and Circuit Boards13.12 Universal I/O Signal Assignment

Fig. 13-28: JZNC-YIU01-E (CN309 Connector) I/O Allocation and Connection Diagram (For Arc Welding)



13 Description of Units and Circuit Boards13.12 Universal I/O Signal Assignment

Fig. 13-29: JZNC-YIU01-E (CN306 Connector) I/O Allocation and Connection Diagram (For Arc Welding)



DX100

13 Description of Units and Circuit Boards13.12 Universal I/O Signal Assignment

Fig. 13-30: JZNC-YIU01-E (CN307 Connector) I/O Allocation and Connection Diagram (For Arc Welding)



Logical	Input Name / Function
Number	
20010	EXTERNAL START Functions the same as the [START] button in the programming pendant. Only the rising edge of the signal is valid. It starts robot operation (playback). This signal is invalid if external start is prohibited from the playback condition display.
20012	CALL MASTER JOB Only the rising edge of the signal is valid. It calls up the top of the robot program, that is the top of the master job ¹⁾ . This signal is invalid during playback, during teach lock and when play master or call is prohibited (set from the playback operation condition display).
20013	ALARM/ERROR RESET After an alarm or error has occurred and the cause been corrected, this signal resets the alarm or error.
20015	SELECT PLAY MODE The play mode is selected when the mode key on the programming pendant is set at "REMOTE". Only the rising edge of the signal is valid. When this selection signal assigned concurrently with other mode selection signal, the teach mode is selected on a priority basis. The signal is invalid while EXTERNAL MODE SWITCH is prohibited.
20016	SELECT TEACH MODE The teach mode is selected when the mode key of the programming pendant is set at "REMOTE". The other mode selection is unavailable when this signal is ON; the signal is selected by priority even when the other selection signal is ON, enabling the teach mode selection.
20020	INTERFERENCE 1 ENTRANCE PROHIBITED If the manipulator attempts to enter the cube 1 ²⁾ area while this signal is ON, the manipulator goes to wait status (with servo power ON). During wait status, the manipulator operation restarts if this signal turns OFF.
20021	INTERFERENCE 2 ENTRANCE PROHIBITED If the manipulator attempts to enter the cube 2 ²⁾ area while this signal is ON, the manipulator goes to wait status (with servo power ON). During wait status, the manipulator operation restarts if this signal turns OFF.
20022	WORK PROHIBITED (Arc Generation Prohibited) Arc generation is prohibited while this signal is ON. Arc generation starts when this signal turns OFF inside the arc-generation area. Use this signal to confirm teaching.
20023	WORK RESPONSE (Pseudo Arc ON Response) This signal is used as a pseudo signal in cases that "Arc Generation Confirmation" signal is not equipped on a welding power supply. Wire this signal ON normally (short to OV).
20026	WEAVING PROHIBITED Weaving is prohibited while this signal is ON. Use this signal to check taught steps and movements without performing the weaving operation.
20027	SENSING PROHIBITED Arc sensing is prohibited while this signal is ON. Use this signal to check taught steps and movements if an arc sensor is mounted.

Table 13-6: Specific Input (Arc Welding)

1.

. .

1 A master job is a job (program) which can be called by CALL MASTER JOB. Other functions are the same as for normal jobs. Normally, the parent job, which manages the child jobs called up immediately after the power is turned ON, is set as the master job.

2 See chapter 8.6 "Interference Area" at page 8-56.

.

13 Description of Units and Circuit Boards 13.12 Universal I/O Signal Assignment

Table 13-7: Specific Output (Arc Welding)

Logical	Output Name / Function
Number	
30010	RUNNING This signal signifies that the job is running. (Signifies that the job is running, system status is waiting reserved start, or test run is running.) This signal status is the same status as [START] in the programming pendant.
30011	SERVO IS ON This signal signifies that the servo power is turned ON, internal processing such as current position creation is complete, and the system is able to receive the START command. This signal turns OFF when the servo power supply turns OFF. It can be used for DX100 status diagnosis for an external start.
30012	TOP OF MASTER JOB This signal signifies that the execution position is the top of the master job. This signal can be used to confirm that the master job has been called. ¹⁾
30013	ALARM/ERROR OCCURRED This signal signifies that an alarm or an error occurred. If a major error occurs, this signal remains ON until the main power is turned OFF.
30014	BATTERY ALARM This signal turns ON to notify that the battery requires replacing when the voltage drops from the battery for backup memory of the encoder. Major problems may result if memory data is lost because of an expired battery. It is recommended to avoid these problems by using this signal as a warning signal.
30015 to 30017	REMOTE/PLAY/TEACH MODE SELECTED This signal notifies the current mode setting. These signals are synchronized with the mode select switch in the programming pendant. The signal corresponding to the selected mode turns ON.
30020	IN CUBE 1 This signal turns ON when the current TCP lies inside a pre-defined space (Cube 1). Use this signal to prevent interference with other manipulators and positioners.
30021	IN CUBE 2 This signal turns ON when the current TCP lies inside a pre-defined space (Cube 2). Use this signal to prevent interference with other manipulators and positioners.
30022	WORK HOME POSITION (IN CUBE 32) ²⁾ This signal turns ON when the current TCP lies inside the work home position area. Use this signal to evaluate whether the manipulator is in the start position.
30023	INTERMEDIATE START OK This signal turns ON when the manipulator operates. It turns OFF when the currently executed line is moved with the cursor or when editing operation is carried out after HOLD is applied during operation. Therefore, this signal can be used as a restart interlock after a HOLD is applied. However, it also turns ON in the teach mode and TEACH MODE SELECTED signal must be referred together.
30024	GAS SHORTAGE (MONITOR) This signal stays ON while the gas shortage signal from the welding power supply is ON.
30025	WIRE SHORTAGE (MONITOR) This signal status ON while the wire shortage signal from the welding power supply is ON.
30026	WIRE STICKING (MONITOR) The wire sticking check is conducted automatically when the arc turns OFF. If wire sticking is detected, this signal remains ON until the wire sticking is released.
30027	ARC SHORTAGE (MONITOR) This signal stays ON while the arc shortage signal from the welding power supply is ON.

This signal is not output during operation.
 The work home position cube and Cube 32 are same.

13 Description of Units and Circuit Boards13.12 Universal I/O Signal Assignment

13.12.2 Handling

Fig. 13-31: JZNC-YIU01-E (CN308 Connector) I/O Allocation and
Connection Diagram (For Handling)



DX100

13 Description of Units and Circuit Boards13.12 Universal I/O Signal Assignment

Fig. 13-32: JZNC-YIU01-E (CN309 Connector) I/O Allocation and Connection Diagram (For Handling)



13 Description of Units and Circuit Boards13.12 Universal I/O Signal Assignment

Fig. 13-33: JZNC-YIU01-E (CN306 Connector) I/O Allocation and Connection Diagram (For Handling)



DX100

13 Description of Units and Circuit Boards13.12 Universal I/O Signal Assignment

Fig. 13-34: JZNC-YIU01-E (CN307 Connector) I/O Allocation and Connection Diagram (For Handling)



Logical Input Name / Function		
Number		
20010	EXTERNAL START Functions the same as the [START] button in the programming pendant. Only the rising edge of the signal is valid. It starts robot operation (playback). This signal is invalid if external start is prohibited from the playback condition display.	
20012	CALL MASTER JOB Only the rising edge of the signal is valid. It calls up the top of the robot program, that is the top of the master job ¹⁾ . This signal is invalid during playback, during teach lock and when play master or call is prohibited (set from the playback operation condition display).	
20013	ALARM/ERROR RESET After an alarm or error has occurred and the cause been corrected, this signal resets the alarm or error.	
20015	SELECT PLAY MODE The play mode is selected when the mode key on the programming pendant is set at "REMOTE". Only the rising edge of the signal is valid. When this selection signal assigned concurrently with other mode selection signal, the teach mode is selected on a priority basis. The signal is invalid while EXTERNAL MODE SWITCH is prohibited.	
20016	SELECT TEACH MODE The teach mode is selected when the mode key of the programming pendant is set at "REMOTE". The other mode selection is unavailable when this signal is ON; the signal is selected by priority even when the other selection signal is ON, enabling the teach mode selection.	
20020	INTERFERENCE 1 ENTRANCE PROHIBITED If the manipulator attempts to enter the cube 1 ²⁾ area while this signal is ON, the manipulator goes to wait status (with servo power ON). During wait status, the manipulator operation restarts if this signal turns OFF.	
20021	INTERFERENCE 2 ENTRANCE PROHIBITED If the manipulator attempts to enter the cube 2 ²⁾ area while this signal is ON, the manipulator goes to wait status (with servo power ON). During wait status, the manipulator operation restarts if this signal turns OFF.	
20026	TOOL SHOCK SENSOR This is normally ON (NC) signal input. When it turns OFF, an DX100 displays a message "HAND TOOL SHOCK SENSOR OPERATING" and a HOLD is applied. The releasing in teach mode is done on the handling application diagnostic display. Set tool shock sensor function "NOT USE" on the handling applications diagnostic display if this signal is not be used.	
20027	LOW AIR PRESSURE This signal is normally OFF (NO). When it turns ON, DX100 displays user alarm in the PLAY mode or displays user message in the teach mode.	
20050 to 20057	SENSOR INPUT 1 - 8 Inputs 1 to 8 are monitored with the HSEN handling specific instructions. Sensor	

Table 13-8: Specific Input (Handling)

1 A master job is a job (program) which can be called by CALL MASTER JOB. Other functions are the same as for normal jobs. Normally, the parent job, which manages the child jobs called up immediately after the power is turned ON, is set as the master job.

inputs 1 to 8 correspond to HSEN 1 to 8.

2 See chapter 8.6 "Interference Area" at page 8-56.

Logical	Output Name / Function
Number	
30010	RUNNING This signal signifies that the job is running. (Signifies that the job is running, system status is waiting reserved start, or test run is running.) This signal status is the same status as [START] in the programming pendant.
30011	SERVO IS ON This signal signifies that the servo power is turned ON, internal processing such as current position creation is complete, and the system is able to receive the START command. This signal turns OFF when the servo power supply turns OFF. It can be used for DX100 status diagnosis for an external start.
30012	TOP OF MASTER JOB This signal signifies that the execution position is the top of the master job. This signal can be used to confirm that the master job has been called. ¹⁾
30013	ALARM/ERROR OCCURRED This signal signifies that an alarm or an error occurred. If a major error occurs, this signal remains ON until the main power is turned OFF.
30014	BATTERY ALARM This signal turns ON to notify that the battery requires replacing when the voltage drops from the battery for backup memory of the encoder. Major problems may result if memory data is lost because of an expired battery. It is recommended to avoid these problems by using this signal as a warning signal.
30015 to 30017	REMOTE/PLAY/TEACH MODE SELECTED This signal notifies the current mode setting. These signals are synchronized with the mode select switch in the programming pendant. The signal corresponding to the selected mode turns ON.
30020	IN CUBE 1 This signal turns ON when the current TCP lies inside a pre-defined space (Cube 1). Use this signal to prevent interference with other manipulators and positioners.
30021	IN CUBE 2 This signal turns ON when the current TCP lies inside a pre-defined space (Cube 2). Use this signal to prevent interference with other manipulators and positioners.
30022	WORK HOME POSITION (IN CUBE 32) ²⁾ This signal turns ON when the current TCP lies inside the work home position area. Use this signal to evaluate whether the manipulator is in the start position.
30023	INTERMEDIATE START OK This signal turns ON when the manipulator operates. It turns OFF when the currently executed line is moved with the cursor or when editing operation is carried out after HOLD is applied during operation. Therefore, this signal can be used as a restart interlock after a HOLD is applied. However, it also turns ON in the teach mode and TEACH MODE SELECTED signal must be referred together.
30050 to 30057	HAND VALVE 1-4 These outputs are controlled by the HAND handling specific instructions. Hand valves 1 to 4 correspond to HAND 1 to 4.

Table	13-9:	Specific	Output	(Handling)
-------	-------	----------	--------	------------

This signal is not output during operation.
 The work home position cube and Cube 32 are same.

13 Description of Units and Circuit Boards13.12 Universal I/O Signal Assignment

13.12.3 General Application

Fig. 13-35: JZNC-YIU01-E (CN308 Connector) I/O Allocation and Connection Diagram (For General Application)



13 Description of Units and Circuit Boards13.12 Universal I/O Signal Assignment

Fig. 13-36: JZNC-YIU01-E (CN309 Connector) I/O Allocation and Connection Diagram (For General Application)



13 Description of Units and Circuit Boards13.12 Universal I/O Signal Assignment

Fig. 13-37: JZNC-YIU01-E (CN306 Connector) I/O Allocation and Connection Diagram (General Application)



13 Description of Units and Circuit Boards13.12 Universal I/O Signal Assignment

Fig. 13-38: JZNC-YIU01-E (CN307 Connector) I/O Allocation and Connection Diagram (For General Application)



Logical	Input Name / Function		
Number			
20010	EXTERNAL START Functions the same as the [START] button in the programming pendant. Only the rising edge of the signal is valid. It starts robot operation (playback). This signal is invalid if external start is prohibited from the playback condition display.		
20012	CALL MASTER JOB Only the rising edge of the signal is valid. It calls up the top of the robot program, that is the top of the master job ¹⁾ . This signal is invalid during playback, during teach-lock and when play master or call is prohibited (set from the playback operation condition display).		
20013	ALARM/ERROR RESET After an alarm or error has occurred and the cause been corrected, this signal resets the alarm or error.		
20015	SELECT PLAY MODE The play mode is selected when the mode key on the programming pendant is set at "REMOTE". Only the rising edge of the signal is valid. When this selection signal assigned concurrently with other mode selection signal, the teach mode is selected on a priority basis. The signal is invalid while EXTERNAL MODE SWITCH is prohibited.		
20016	SELECT TEACH MODE The teach mode is selected when the mode key of the programming pendant is set at "REMOTE". The other mode selection is unavailable when this signal is ON; the signal is selected by priority even when the other selection signal is ON, enabling the teach mode selection.		
20020	INTERFERENCE 1 ENTRANCE PROHIBITED If the manipulator attempts to enter the cube 1 ²⁾ area while this signal is ON, the manipulator goes to wait status (with servo power ON). During wait status, the manipulator operation restarts if this signal turns OFF.		
20021	INTERFERENCE 2 ENTRANCE PROHIBITED If the manipulator attempts to enter the cube 2^{2} area while this signal is ON, the manipulator goes to wait status (with servo power ON). During wait status, the manipulator operation restarts if this signal turns OFF.		
20022	WORK PROHIBITED (Tool ON Prohibited) Even if TOOLON instruction is executed, DX100 doesn't output to external while this signal is ON.		
20024	INTERFERENCE 3 ENTRANCE PROHIBITED If the manipulator attempts to enter the cube 3 ²⁾ area while this signal is ON, the manipulator goes to wait status (with servo power ON). During wait status, the manipulator operation restarts if this signal turns OFF.		
20025	INTERFERENCE 4 ENTRANCE PROHIBITED If the manipulator attempts to enter the cube 4 ²⁾ area while this signal is ON, the manipulator goes to wait status (with servo power ON). During wait status, the manipulator operation restarts if this signal turns OFF.		

Table 13-10: Specific Input (General Application)

1 A master job is a job (program) which can be called by CALL MASTER JOB. Other functions are the same as for normal jobs. Normally, the parent job, which manages the child jobs called up immediately after the power is turned ON, is set as the master job.

2 See chapter 8.6 "Interference Area" at page 8-56.

13 Description of Units and Circuit Boards 13.12 Universal I/O Signal Assignment

	Table 13-11: S	pecific Outpu	ıt (General Ar	oplication)
--	----------------	---------------	----------------	-------------

Logical	Output Name / Function
Number	
30010	RUNNING This signal signifies that the job is running. (Signifies that the job is running, system status is waiting reserved start, or test run is running.) This signal status is the same status as [START] in the programming pendant.
30011	SERVO IS ON This signal signifies that the servo power is turned ON, internal processing such as current position creation is complete, and the system is able to receive the START command. This signal turns OFF when the servo power supply turns OFF. It can be used for DX100 status diagnosis for an external start.
30012	TOP OF MASTER JOB This signal signifies that the execution position is the top of the master job. This signal can be used to confirm that the master job has been called. ^{1)*1}
30013	ALARM/ERROR OCCURRED This signal signifies that an alarm or an error occurred. If a major error occurs, this signal remains ON until the main power is turned OFF.
30014	BATTERY ALARM This signal turns ON to notify that the battery requires replacing when the voltage drops from the battery for backup memory of the encoder. Major problems may result if memory data is lost because of an expired battery. It is recommended to avoid these problems by using this signal as a warning signal.
30015 to 30017	REMOTE/PLAY/TEACH MODE SELECTED This signal notifies the current mode setting. These signals are synchronized with the mode select switch in the programming pendant. The signal corresponding to the selected mode turns ON.
30020	IN CUBE 1 This signal turns ON when the current TCP lies inside a pre-defined space (Cube 1). Use this signal to prevent interference with other manipulators and positioners.
30021	IN CUBE 2 This signal turns ON when the current TCP lies inside a pre-defined space (Cube 2). Use this signal to prevent interference with other manipulators and positioners.
30022	WORK HOME POSITION (IN CUBE 32) ²⁾ This signal turns ON when the current TCP lies inside the work home position area. Use this signal to evaluate whether the robot is in the start position.
30023	INTERMEDIATE START OK This signal turns ON when the manipulator operates. It turns OFF when the currently executed line is moved with the cursor or when editing operation is carried out after HOLD is applied during operation. Therefore, this signal can be used as a restart interlock after a HOLD is applied. However, it also turns ON in the teach mode and TEACH MODE SELECTED signal must be referred together.
30024	IN CUBE 3 This signal turns ON when the current TCP lies inside a pre-defined space (Cube 3). Use this signal to prevent interference with other manipulators and positioners.
30025	IN CUBE 4 This signal turns ON when the current TCP lies inside a pre-defined space (Cube 4). Use this signal to prevent interference with other manipulators and positioners.
30026	WORK COMMAND This signal provides the command for the general tool to operate. TOOL ON instruction execution or the [TOOL ON] key in the programming pendant turns this signal ON and TOOL OFF instruction execution or the [TOOL OFF] key in the programming pendant turns it OFF. However, it remains OFF while the WORK PROHIBITED signal (2022) is input or while the robot is stopped.

This signal is not output during operation.
 The work home position cube and Cube 32 are same.

13 Description of Units and Circuit Boards13.12 Universal I/O Signal Assignment

13.12.4 Spot Welding

Fig. 13-39: JZNC-YIU01-E (CN308 Connector) I/O Allocation and Connection Diagram (For Spot Welding)



13-58

13 Description of Units and Circuit Boards13.12 Universal I/O Signal Assignment

Fig. 13-40: JZNC-YIU01-E (CN309 Connector) I/O Allocation and Connection Diagram (For Spot Welding)



13 Description of Units and Circuit Boards13.12 Universal I/O Signal Assignment

Fig. 13-41: JZNC-YIU01-E (CN306 Connector) I/O Allocation and Connection Diagram (For Spot Welding)



DX100

13 Description of Units and Circuit Boards13.12 Universal I/O Signal Assignment

Fig. 13-42: JZNC-YIU01-E (CN307 Connector) I/O Allocation and Connection Diagram (For Spot Welding)



Logical	Input Name / Function
Number	
20010	EXTERNAL START Functions the same as the [START] button in the programming pendant. Only the rising edge of the signal is valid. It starts robot operation (playback). This signal is invalid if external start is prohibited from the playback condition display.
20012	CALL MASTER JOB Only the rising edge of the signal is valid. It calls up the top of the robot program, that is the top of the master job ¹⁾ . This signal is invalid during playback, during teach-lock and when play master or call is prohibited (set from the playback operation condition display).
20013	ALARM/ERROR RESET After an alarm or error has occurred and the cause been corrected, this signal resets the alarm or error.
20015	SELECT PLAY MODE The play mode is selected when the mode key on the programming pendant is set at "REMOTE". Only the rising edge of the signal is valid. When this selection signal assigned concurrently with other mode selection signal, the teach mode is selected on a priority basis. The signal is invalid while EXTERNAL MODE SWITCH is prohibited.
20016	SELECT TEACH MODE The teach mode is selected when the mode key of the programming pendant is set at "REMOTE". The other mode selection is unavailable when this signal is ON; the signal is selected by priority even when the other selection signal is ON, enabling the teach mode selection.
20020	INTERFERENCE 1 ENTRANCE PROHIBITED If the manipulator attempts to enter the cube 1 ²⁾ area while this signal is ON, the manipulator goes to wait status (with servo power ON). During wait status, the manipulator operation restarts if this signal turns OFF.
20021	INTERFERENCE 2 ENTRANCE PROHIBITED If the manipulator attempts to enter the cube 2 ²⁾ area while this signal is ON, the manipulator goes to wait status (with servo power ON). During wait status, the manipulator operation restarts if this signal turns OFF.
20022	WELDING ON/OFF (From sequencer) This signal inputs the welding ON/OFF selector switch status from the sequencer in the interlock unit. The WELD ON/OFF signal is output to the Power Source according to this signal and the manipulator status.
20023	WELDING PAUSE (From sequencer) This signal is used to move the manipulator to the home position when an error occurs in the Power Source or the gun. The robot ignores the spot welding instruction and operates playback motion.
20024	INTERFERENCE 3 ENTRANCE PROHIBITED If the manipulator attempts to enter the cube 3 ²⁾ area while this signal is ON, the manipulator goes to wait status (with servo power ON). During wait status, the manipulator operation restarts if this signal turns OFF.
20025	INTERFERENCE 4 ENTRANCE PROHIBITED If the manipulator attempts to enter the cube 4 ²⁾ area while this signal is ON, the manipulator goes to wait status (with servo power ON). During wait status, the manipulator operation restarts if this signal turns OFF.
20050 3)	TIMER COOLING WATER ERROR This signal monitors the status of timer cooling water. The manipulator displays alarm and stops when this signal is input. The servo power remains ON.
20051 3)	GUN COOLING WATER ERROR This signal monitors the status of gun cooling water. The manipulator displays alarm and stops when this signal is input. The servo power supply remains ON.

Table 13-12: Specific Input (Spot Welding) (Sheet 1 of 2)

13 Description of Units and Circuit Boards

13.12 Universal I/O Signal Assignment

Logical	Input Name / Function
Number	
20052 3)	TRANSTHERMO ERROR Error signal is sent from the transformer in the gun to the robot. This signal is ON normally (NC) and an alarm occurs when the signal is OFF. The servo power supply remains ON.
20053 3)	LOW AIR PRESSURE When air pressure is reduced and this input is turned ON, an alarm occurs. The servo power supply remains ON.
4)	WELD COMPLETION This signal indicates that the Power Source completed welding without error. This signal is used as a confirmation signal for welding instruction execution and manual spot welding. After this signal is input, the welding sequence is completed and the next step is executed when confirmation limit switch is not provided.
4)	WELDING ERROR This signal indicates an abnormal welding result or Power Source's error. Alarm occurs and the manipulator stops if this signal is input during welding.
4)	STICK DETECTION This signal indicates an abnormal welding result or Power Source's error. Alarm occurs and the manipulator stops if this signal is input during welding.
4)	GUN FULL OPEN DETECTION This signal indicates that the stroke of the double stroke gun is full open.
4)	GUN SHORT OPEN DETECTION This signal is connected with a single gun open verification limit switch or a double stroke gun short open verification limit switch to verify the gun open.
4)	GUN PRESSURE DETECTION This signal indicates that a gun is in pressing status.
4)	TIP REPLACE COMPLETION When this signal is input after tip replacement, the TIP REPLACE REQUEST signal turns OFF, and the stored number of welding is cleared.

Table 13-12: Specific Input (Spot Welding) (Sheet 2 of 2)

1 A master job is a job (program) which can be called by CALL MASTER JOB. Other functions are the same as for normal jobs. Normally, the parent job, which manages the child jobs called up immediately after the power is turned ON, is set as the master job.

2 See chapter 8.6 "Interference Area" at page 8-56.

3 This signal can be set as "USE" or "NOT USE" by pseudo input signal "8202x". If "NOT USE" is selected, this signal can be used as the universal I/O signal described in parentheses.

4 This signal can be allocated to any universal I/O signal at the I/O allocation display in operation condition.

Pseudo Input Signal 8202x	7 6 5 4 3 2 1 0 0 0 0 1 _1 1 1 1
	Timer Cooling Water Error Validating (or IN09)
	Gun Cooling Water Error Validating (or IN10)
	Transthermo Error Validating (or IN11)
	Low Air Pressure Validating (or IN12)
	Weld ON/OFF Validating (or OUT09)

Logical	Output Name / Function
Number	
30010	RUNNING This signal signifies that the job is running. (Signifies that the job is running, system status is waiting reserved start, or test run is running.) This signal status is the same status as [START] in the programming pendant.
30011	SERVO IS ON This signal signifies that the servo power is turned ON, internal processing such as current position creation is complete, and the system is able to receive the START command. This signal turns OFF when the servo power supply turns OFF. It can be used for DX100 status diagnosis for an external start.
30012	TOP OF MASTER JOB This signal signifies that the execution position is the top of the master job. This signal can be used to confirm that the master job has been called. ¹⁾
30013	ALARM/ERROR OCCURRED This signal signifies that an alarm or an error occurred. If a major error occurs, this signal remains ON until the main power is turned OFF.
30014	BATTERY ALARM This signal turns ON to notify that the battery requires replacing when the voltage drops from the battery for backup memory of the encoder. Major problems may result if memory data is lost because of an expired battery. It is recommended to avoid these problems by using this signal as a warning signal.
30015 to 30017	REMOTE/PLAY/TEACH MODE SELECTED This signal notifies the current mode setting. These signals are synchronized with the mode select switch in the programming pendant. The signal corresponding to the selected mode turns ON.
30020	IN CUBE 1 This signal turns ON when the current TCP lies inside a pre-defined space (Cube 1). Use this signal to prevent interference with other manipulators and positioners.
30021	IN CUBE 2 This signal turns ON when the current TCP lies inside a pre-defined space (Cube 2). Use this signal to prevent interference with other manipulators and positioners.
30022	WORK HOME POSITION (IN CUBE 32) ²⁾ This signal turns ON when the current TCP lies inside a the work home position area. Use this signal to evaluate whether the robot is in the start position.
30057 3)	TIP REPLACE REQUEST This signal is output when the stored number of welding reaches the number of welding set for the tip replacement.
30023	INTERMEDIATE START OK This signal turns ON when the manipulator operates. It turns OFF when the currently executed line is moved with the cursor or when editing operation is carried out after HOLD is applied during operation. Therefore, this signal can be used as a restart interlock after a HOLD is applied. However, it also turns ON in the teach mode and TEACH MODE SELECTED signal must be referred together.
30024	IN CUBE 3 This signal turns ON when the current TCP lies inside a pre-defined space (Cube 3). Use this signal to prevent interference with other manipulators and positioners.
30025	IN CUBE 4 This signal turns ON when the current TCP lies inside a pre-defined space (Cube 4). Use this signal to prevent interference with other manipulators and positioners.
30050 3)	WELD ON/OFF Outputs a signal input from the interlock panel, etc.considering the robot status.

Table 13-13: Specific Output (Spot Welding) (Sheet 1 of 2)

13 Description of Units and Circuit Boards

13.12 Universal I/O Signal Assignment

Logical	Output Name / Function
Number	
30051 4)	WELD ERROR RESET This signal commands the reset error status of the Power Source. This is operated with the programing pendant operation.
30052 to 30056 4)	WELD CONDITION (Level signals) 1(1), 2(2), 4(3), 8(4), 16(5), 32(6), 64(7), 128(8) Sets the welding conditions for the Power Source. The output format can be selected as binary or discrete (bit number). It can handle up to 255 conditions. Most-significant bit is the parity bit (when specified).
4)	WELDING COMMAND This signal outputs execution command signal to the Power Source. This signal is not necessary for a Power Source which is executed using the WELDING CONDITION signal.
4)	STROKE CHANGE1 SINGLE SOLENOID DOUBLE SOLENOID This is a signal, when a double stroke gun is used, to change the open stroke of the welding gun.
4)	GUN PRESS COMMAND This outputs gun press command.

Table 13-13: Specific Output (Spot Welding) (Sheet 2 of 2)

1 This signal is not output during operation.

2 The work home position cube and Cube 32 are same.

3 This signal can be select "USE" or "NOT USE" by pseudo input signal "8202x". If "NOT USE" is selected, this signal can be used as the universal I/O signal described in parentheses.

4 This signal can be allocated to any universal I/O signal at the I/O allocation display in operation condition.



13 Description of Units and Circuit Boards13.12 Universal I/O Signal Assignment

13.12.5 JANCD-YEW01-E Circuit Board (Standard)

13.12.5.1 Arc Welding

JANCD-YEW01-E Circuit Board: Analog outputs $\times 2$ ports, Analog inputs \times 2 ports + Status signal I/O of a Welder.



A

absolute data	8-4
absolute encoder	8-3
ACCELARATION SPEED	11-21
ACCELARATION TIME	11-12
Acceleration/Deceleration	12-2
Addition of Base and Station Axes	11-3
Addition of I/O Modules	11-1
Alarm Display	12-3
ALARM HISTORY	7-3
All Limit Release Function	8-91
Allocating an Operation	8-102
Allocation of I/O Control Instructions	8-111
Allocation Window	8-102
Alternate Output Allocation	8-107
alternate output allocation	8-101
Ambient Temperature	12-2
Analog Incremental Output Allocation	8-110
analog incremental output allocation	8-101
ANALOG MONITOR	7-3
analog output allocation 8-1	01, 8-109
Application	12-3
ARC SHORTAGE (MONITOR)	13-45
ARM CONTROL	7-3
ARM control	8-38
Automatic Measurement of the Tool Load and the Center of Gravity	8-32
AXES CONFIG window	11-9
Axis Interference Area	8-64
Axis keys	6-2

В

BALL-SCREW PITCH	11-11, 11-19
base coordinate	8-56
B-Axis	6-2

С

Cable Junctions	4-2
Cautions for Connection of Dual Input Signals	
Changing the Absolute Data	8-8
Changing the Output Status	8-114
Changing the Parameter Setting	8-116
Checking the TCP	8-31
circuit board racks	13-8
Clearing Absolute Data	8-8
Clearing Calibration Data	8-29
Clearing the Interference Area Data	8-72
Clearing the User Coordinates	8-87
Collision proof Frames	12-3
COMMAND POSITION	7-3
Condition Number	8-75
Connecting the Manipulator Cable	4-11
Connecting the Primary Power Supply	4-6
Connecting the Programming Pendant	4-12
Connection	4-1

Index

Construction	12-2
Contents Confirmation	2-1
Control Circuit Board (JANCD-YCP01-E)	13-9
control circuit boards	13-8
control group	11-6
Converter	13-35
Cooling System	12-2
Coordinate System	12-3
CPU Unit Configuration	13-8
CREATE NEW JOB	
cube	8-57
Cube Interference	8-91
cube number	
Cubic Interference Area	8-56
CURRENT POSITION	

D

DATE/TIME	
Definition of the User Coordinates	8-83
DELETE	7-3
detection level (level range: 1 to 500)	8-76
Detection Mode	8-75
DEVICE	7-3
Digital I/O	12-2
Dimensions	12-2
display allocation	8-100, 8-105
Door Interlock	12-3
Drive Unit	12-2
DROP AMOUNT	7-3

Е

E-Axis	
Editing Mode	
emergency stop	
Enable Switch	
Essential Measures	
Executing the Display Allocation	
Executing the I/O Control Allocation	
Executing the Instruction/Output Control Allocation	
Executing the Job Call Allocation	
Execution of Allocation	
Expanded Instruction Set	
External Emergency Stop	13-15, 13-26, 13-33
External Enable Switch	13-32, 13-33
External Hold	13-15, 13-31, 13-33
External Servo ON	13-15, 13-30, 13-33
External Start	13-15
eyebolt	1-6

F

FD/CF		7-	-3
File Initialization	8-	11	19

Full-speed Test	13-29, 13-33
Function List	12-3
Function Select	8-75

G

GAS SHORTAGE (MONITOR)	13-45
Grounding 1	-5, 12-2
Group (4-bit/8-bit) Output Allocation	8-109
group output allocation (4-bit/8-bit)	8-101
GRP CONBINATION	7-4
GUN COOLING WATER ERROR	13-62
GUN FULL OPEN DETECTION	13-63
GUN PRESSURE DETECTION	13-63
GUN SHORT OPEN DETECTION	13-63

Н

HAND VALVE	13-51
Handling Procedure	3-1
HOME POSITION	7-3
Home Position	8-4
Home Position Calibration	8-2
How to Calculate Tool Load Information	8-43

I/O Diagnosis	12-3
I/O Instructions	12-4
I/O modules	11-1
I/O MSG HISTORY	
I/O Unit (JZNC-YIU01-E)	13-13
IN/OUT	
Inching Operation	12-3
INERTIA RATIO	11-12, 11-21
Initial Diagnosis	5-2
Initializing Data File	8-120
Initializing I/O Data	8-122
Initializing Job File	8-119
Initializing Parameter File	8-121
Initializing System Data	8-124
Installation and Wiring Safety	1-5
Instruction Allocation	8-100, 8-103
Instruction of Shock Detection Function	8-77
Instruction Set	8-93
Interface	12-3
INTERFERENCE	
Interference area	8-56

J

JANCD-YEW01-E Circuit Board (Standard)..... 13-66

_

Index

JOB	
Job Call Allocation	8-100, 8-105
JOB CAPACITY	7-2

Κ

KEY ALLOCATION	7-4
Key Allocation (EACH)	8-100
Key Allocation (SIM)	8-100

L

Language	12-4
L-axis	
Leakage Breaker Installation	
Learning Function	
lifting the DX100	1-6
LIMIT RELEASE	
limit switch	
LOAD	
LOW AIR PRESSURE	13-50, 13-63
L-U Interference	8-91

Μ

Machine Lock	12-3
Management Mode	
MANIPULATOR TYPE	
Manufacturer allocation	
MASTER JOB	
Max. Disturbance Force	
MAX. RPM	11-12, 11-21
Measurement of the Tool Load and the Center of Gra	avity 8-33
Mechanical Limit	
MECHANICAL SPEC window	11-10, 11-11, 11-19, 11-20
Memory Capacity	
Modification of System Configuration	11-1
Modification of Teaching Points	12-3
momentary output allocation	
MONITORING TIME	
MOTION RANGE 11-10,	11-11, 11-18, 11-19, 11-20
MOTOR SPEC window	11-12
Moving the MOTOMAN	1-13

Ν

Noise Filter	4-3
Number of Tool Files	8-18
Numeric Key Customize Function	8-100

0

OPERATE COND	
Operating	13-15
Operation Instructions	12-4
Operation Mode	
Operation Time Display	12-3
Order Number	2-2
ORG	8-83
Output of the Work Home Position Signal	8-55
Overrun	8-88
OVERRUN&S-SENSOR	

P

PARAMETER	
Path Confirmation	12-3
PINION DIAMETER	11-11, 11-19
Positioning System	12-2
POWER ON/OFF POS	
Power Supply	4-3, 12-2
Power Supply Contactor Unit	13-3
Primary Power Supply Breaker Installation	4-5
Program Control Instructions	12-4
Programming	12-4
Programming Pendant	12-4
pulse output allocation	8-101, 8-108
PWM Amplifier	13-35

R

R-Axis	6-2
REDUCTION RATIO	11-19, 11-20
Registering/Changing the Work Home Position	8-54
Relative Humidity	
RES. STARG (CNCT)	
RES. START (JOB).	
RES. STATUS	
RESERVE JOB NAME	7-4
Resetting the Shock Detected	8-82
Returning to the Work Home Position	8-55
ROBOT	7-3
robot coordinate	8-56
robot I/F board	13-8
Robot I/F Board (JANCD-YIF01-1E)	13-9
robot I/O unit (JZNC-YIU01-E)	13-14
Robot installation angle	8-39
Robot Motion Control	12-4
robot programming language (INFORM III)	8-93
Robot Setup Condition	8-38
Running Speed Limit	12-3
DX100

Index

S

Safety 1-3 Safety Plug 13-27, 13-33 SAVE 7-3 S-Axis 6-2 SECOND HOME POS 7-3 Security Mode 7-1 SELECT JOB 7-2 Selecting the User Coordinate File 8-84
Safety Plug 13-27, 13-33 SAVE 7-3 S-Axis 6-2 SECOND HOME POS 7-3 Security Mode 7-1 SELECT JOB 7-2 Selecting the User Coordinate File 8-84
SAVE 7-3 S-Axis 6-2 SECOND HOME POS 7-3 Security Mode 7-1 SELECT JOB 7-2 Selecting the User Coordinate File 8-84
S-Axis
SECOND HOME POS
Security Mode 7-1 SELECT JOB 7-2 Selecting the User Coordinate File 8-84
SELECT JOB 7-2 Selecting the User Coordinate File 8-84
Selecting the User Coordinate File
Self-Diagnosis 12-3
SENSOR INPUT 13-50
SERVO MONITOR 7-3
SERVO ON 5-3 13-15
SERVO ON READY 5-3
Servo-ON Enable Input 13-19
SERVOPACK 12-5 13-35
SET SPEED 7-4
Setting Contents 8-93
Setting the Controller Clock 8-97
Setting the Play Speed 8-98
Setting the Tool Load Information 8-22
Setting Work Home Position 8-52
SETUP 7-4
SHCKRST instruction 8-77
SHCKSET 8-74
SHCKSET instruction 8-77
S-head payload 8-39
Shock Detection Function 8-74
Shock Detection Function Setting 8-74
Shock Sensor 13-F
Short-cut Function 12-3
Slow Speed Mode Selection 13-30 13-33
Soft Limit on Each Axis 8-91
Soft Limit Release Function 8-90
software limit 8-90
Special Training 1-2
Specification List 12-2
Speed Adjustment 12-3
Speed Setting 12-4
Standard Instruction Set 8-0?
Station Axis Setting 11-19
STICK DETECTION 13-67
Subset Instruction Set
Switch of the tool file 8-51
SYSTEM INFO 7-3

Т

T.C.P. Calibration	12-3
T-Axis	
TEACHING COND	
Teaching the User Coordinates	8-85
three-phase noise filter	4-3
Three-Phase Power Supply	4-3
TIMER COOLING WATER ERROR	13-62
Timer Setting	12-3
TIP REPLACE COMPLETION	13-63
TIP REPLACE REQUEST	13-64

TOOL	
Tool Calibration	8-23
Tool Data Setting	8-18
Tool File	8-18
Tool Load Information	8-43
Tool Load Information Registering	8-49
Tool Load Information Setting	8-43, 8-77
Tool Shock Sensor	13-5
Tool Shock Sensor Releasing	8-88
Transferring the MOTOMAN	1-13
TRANSTHERMO ERROR	13-63
Turning OFF the Main Power	5-5
Turning OFF the Servo Power	5-5
Turning ON the Main Power Supply	5-1
Turning ON the Servo Power	5-3

U

U-arm payload	8-40
U-Axis	
User Alarm Display	12-3
USER COORDINATE	
User Coordinate	8-56, 8-83
User Coordinate Files	8-83
User Coordinate Setting	8-83
user ID	7-4, 7-6

V

VARIABLE	
Variable	12-4
Variable Type	12-4
VERIFY	
VERSION	

W

WEAVING PROHIBITED	13-44
WELD COMPLETION	13-63
WELD CONDITION	13-65
WELD ERROR RESET	13-65
WELD ON/OFF	13-64
WELDING COMMAND	13-65
WELDING ERROR	13-63
WELDING ON/OFF (from sequencer)	13-62
WELDING PAUSE (from sequencer)	13-62
WIRE SHORTAGE (MONITOR)	13-45
WIRE STICKING (MONITOR)	13-45
WORK COMMAND	13-57
WORK HOME POS	7-3
Work Home Position	. 8-52
work home position cube length of its sides	. 8-54
WORK PROHIBITED (arc generation prohibited)	13-44
WORK RESPONSE (pseudo arc ON response)	13-44

DX1	00
-----	----

Index

DX100 INSTRUCTIONS

HEAD OFFICE 2-1 Kurosaki-Shiroishi, Yahatanishi-ku, Kitakyusyu-shi, 806-0004, Japan Phone +81-93-645-7745 Fax +81-93-645-7746

MOTOMAN INC. HEADQUARTERS 805 Liberty Lane, West Carrollton, OH 45449, U.S.A. Phone +1-937-847-6200 Fax +1-937-847-6277

MOTOMAN ROBOTICS EUROPE AB Franska Vagen 10, Box 4004, SE-390 04 Kalmar, Sweden Phone +46-480-417800 Fax +46-480-417999

MOTOMAN ROBOTEC GmbH Kammerfeld strasse 1, 85391 Allershausen, Germany Phone +49-8166-90-100 Fax +49-8166-90-103

YASKAWA ELECTRIC KOREA CORPORATION 1F, Samyang Bldg. 89-1, Shinchun-dong, Donk-Ku, Daegu, Korea Phone +82-53-382-7844 Fax +82-53-382-7845

YASKAWA ELECTRIC (SINGAPORE) PTE. LTD. 151 Lorong Chuan, #04-01, New Tech Park, Singapore 556741 Phone +65-6282-3003 Fax +65-6289-3003

YASKAWA ELECTRIC (MALAYSIA) SDN. BHD. Unit 47-1 and 2. Jalan PJU 5/9, Dataran Sunway, Kota Damansara, 47810, Petailng Jaya Selangor, Malaysia Phone +60-3614-08919 Fax +60-3614-08929

YASKAWA ELECTRIC (THAILAND) CO., LTD. 252/246, 4th Floor. Muang Thai-Phatra office Tower II Rechadapisek Road, Huaykwang Bangkok 10320, Thailand Phone +66-2-693-2200 Fax +66-2-693-4200

SHOUGANG MOTOMAN ROBOT CO., LTD. No.7,Yongchang-North Road, Beijing Economic and Technological and Development Area, Beijing 100076, China Phone +86-10-6788-0541 Fax +86-10-6788-0542

MOTOMAN MOTHERSON ROBOTICS LTD. Plot Number 195-196, First Floor, Imt Manesar -Sector 4, Gurgaon (Haryana),Pin-122050, India Phone +91-124-475-8500 Fax +91-124-475-8542



YASKAWA ELECTRIC CORPORATION

YASKAWA

Specifications are subject to change without notice for ongoing product modifications and improvements.

MANUAL NO. RE-CTO-A215 © Printed in Japan April 2009 08-12